

# FAMILIARISATION

## EXTERIOR

### Directional lighting

This lighting automatically provides additional visibility when cornering.

» 84

### Retractable roof

This equipment changes from the "coupé" configuration to the "cabriolet" configuration and vice versa with a single action.

» 6

### Temporary tyre repair kit

This kit is a complete system, comprising a compressor and a sealant cartridge, for the temporary repair of a tyre.

» 134

### Welcome lighting

This additional exterior and interior lighting, controlled remotely, makes your approach to the vehicle easier when the light is poor.

» 83, 88

### Windstop

In the "cabriolet" configuration, this comfort system reduces air swirl at the front seats.

» 54



## OPENING

## Remote control key



**A.** Unfolding/Folding the key  
(first press this button).



Normal locking  
(press once; fixed lighting of  
the direction indicators).

or



Deadlocking of the vehicle  
(press twice in succession;  
fixed lighting of the direction  
indicators).

Locking the vehicle using the remote  
control or the key also locks the glove  
box and the front armrest.

» 65



Unlocking and partial opening  
of the boot  
(press for more than two sec-  
onds).



Complete or selective unlock-  
ing of the vehicle  
(rapid flashing of the direction  
indicators).

When the light is poor, detected by a  
sensor, the remote switching on of the  
dipped beam headlamps, sidelamps  
and side spotlamps makes your ap-  
proach to the vehicle easier.

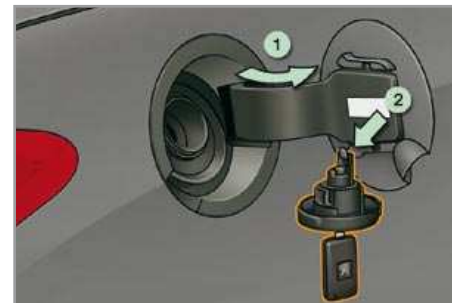
» 83



In the same way, the passenger com-  
partment lighting, such as the courtesy  
lamps, the door sill lamps and the foot-  
well lamps, comes on.

» 88

## Fuel tank



1. Opening the fuel filler flap.
2. Opening and hooking the fuel filler  
cap.

Capacity of the tank: approximately  
60 litres.

» 78

# FAMILIARISATION

## OPENING

### Retractable roof

#### Precautions to be taken before operating the roof

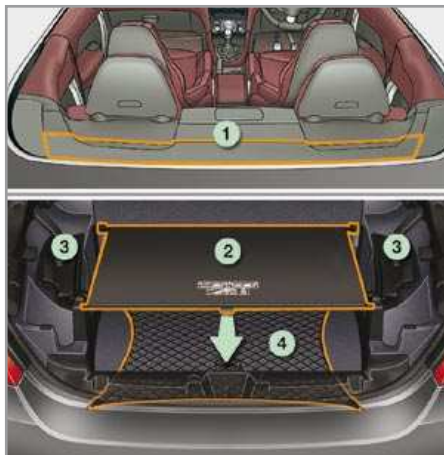
- ☞ Park the vehicle on level ground.
- ☞ Check that no objects could hinder the operation of the roof:
  - nothing should be placed on the moving rear shelf 1, on the boot screen 2 or on the side trims 3,
  - if luggage is transported in the boot, it must not lift the boot screen,
  - any objects, such as a jacket or umbrella, placed in the boot, must be secured using the luggage retaining net 4.
- ☞ Check that the boot screen 2 is secured firmly.
- ☞ Close the boot correctly.



The operation of the roof is the sole responsibility of the driver.

To avoid any risk of injury when operating the roof, ensure that no one is standing near the moving parts.

You are strongly advised not to operate the roof in strong winds.



When washing your vehicle:

- lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key,
- avoid spraying the upper part of the windows,
- keep the end of the high pressure nozzle at least 1 metre from the windows and door seals.

When the vehicle has been washed or after rain, wait until the roof has dried before opening it.

#### Preliminary conditions

- ☞ Start the engine.
- ☞ You must ensure that:
  - the electric windows are initialised (see corresponding section),
  - the ambient temperature is higher than -15 °C.



It is preferable to operate the roof with the engine running and the vehicle stationary. Wait until the end of operation message appears in the multifunction screen before moving off.

On the move, the roof can only be operated below 6 mph (10 km/h), driving smoothly on a level surface.

After the roof has been operated fully four times in succession, the system switches to protection mode temporarily to avoid damage to the roof motors. Let the system rest for approximately ten minutes; if you are unable to operate the roof after this time, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

## OPENING

## Retractable roof operations

## Opening the roof



- ☞ Pull this control until the roof opening operation is complete.

The end of the operation is confirmed by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.

## Closing the roof



- ☞ Press this control until the roof closing operation is complete.

The end of the operation is confirmed by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.



## Change to "cabriolet" configuration:

- the four windows lower partially,
- the boot opens,
- the roof folds into the boot,
- the boot closes.

## Change to "coupé" configuration:

- the four windows lower partially,
- the boot opens,
- the roof unfolds and locks automatically,
- the boot closes.

**i** If you continue to pull or press this control after the end of the operation, the four windows close.

**!** To ensure that the roof operates correctly, do not release the control while the roof is moving.  
However, in the event of any danger, release the control, the roof stops; then, once the danger had been eliminated, complete the movement required.

**!** The roof's electronic control unit may stop the operation in progress as a precaution (example: door movement and roof operation in quick succession). In this case, release the control then operate it again to complete the required operation.

**i** The electric window controls and the control for all four windows are deactivated while the roof is in operation.

**Operating fault**

**!** If a malfunction of the roof occurs, apply the parking brake, switch off the ignition, start the engine again, then start the operation required again.

If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

# FAMILIARISATION

## INTERIOR

### Interior mood lighting

This dimmed lighting of the passenger compartment improves visibility inside the vehicle when the light is poor.

» 88

### Audio and telematic systems

These systems benefit from the latest technology: MP3 compatible Peugeot Connect Sound, Bluetooth, Peugeot Connect Navigation or Peugeot Connect Media with 16/9 retractable colour screen, JBL audio system, auxiliary sockets.

**Peugeot Connect Sound » 249**

**Peugeot Connect Navigation » 217**

**Peugeot Connect Media » 173**

### Secure storage compartments

The glove box and the front armrest are designed to remain locked, even in the "cabriolet" configuration. They can only be locked using the remote control or the key at the same time as the rest of the vehicle.

» 90, 91

### "AIRWAVE" system

Incorporated in each front head restraint, this heating system improves your comfort around the neck in cold weather, particularly in the "cabriolet" configuration. It operates most effectively with the windstop installed in the raised position.

» 60



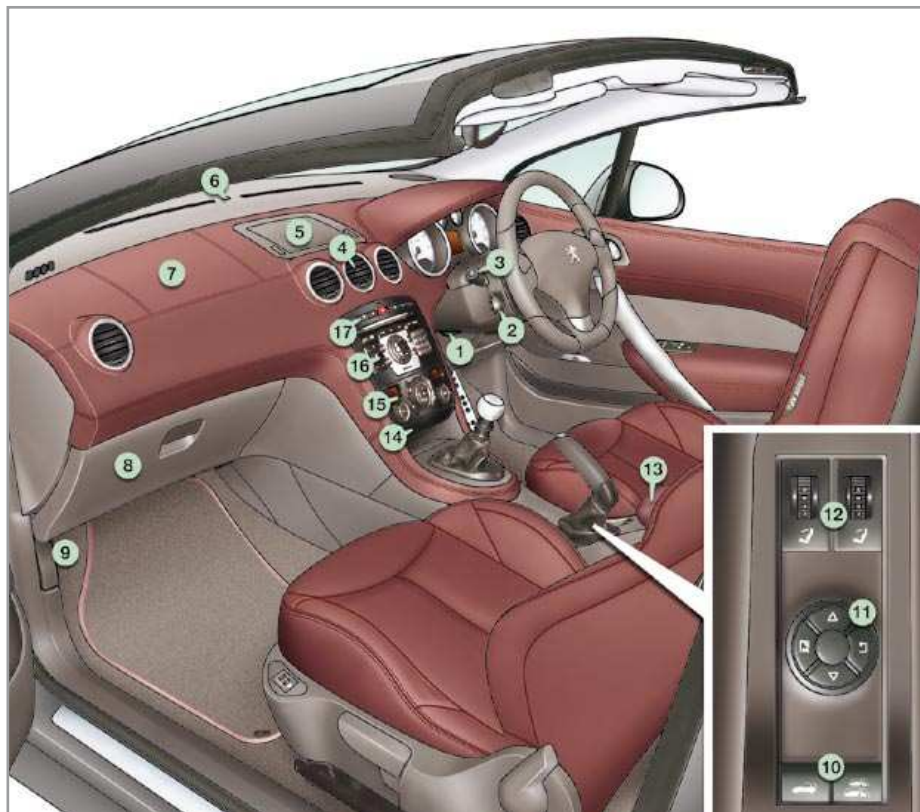
## INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS



1. Steering lock and ignition.
2. Audio and telematics system steering mounted control.
3. Wipers/screenwash/trip computer control stalk.
4. Instrument panel.
5. Driver's airbag. Horn.
6. Gear lever.
7. Parking brake.
8. 12 V accessory socket.
9. Heated seat control.
10. Door mirror controls. Electric window controls.
11. Passenger's airbag deactivation switch.
12. Manual headlamp height adjustment.
13. Side adjustable air vent.
14. Front side window demisting vent.
15. Speaker (tweeter).
16. Windscreen demisting vent.

# FAMILIARISATION

## INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS



1. Steering wheel adjustment control.
2. Cruise control/speed limiter switches.
3. Lighting and direction indicator control stalk.
4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Multifunction screen.
6. Sunshine sensor.
7. Passenger's airbag.
8. Glove box/Audio/video sockets/Fusebox.
9. Bonnet release.
10. Retractable roof control.  
Control for all four windows.
11. Storage compartment or instrument panel navigator associated with the Peugeot Connect Media.
12. "AIRWAVE" system controls.
13. Front armrest.
14. Front ashtray.
15. Heating/air conditioning controls.
16. Audio and telematics system.
17. Emergency call button.  
Alarm button.  
Central locking button.  
Hazard warning lamps button.  
Dynamic stability control (ESP/ASR) button.  
Parking sensors button.  
PEUGEOT services button.

## SITTING COMFORTABLY

### Front seats

#### Forwards-backwards



#### Height



#### Seat back angle



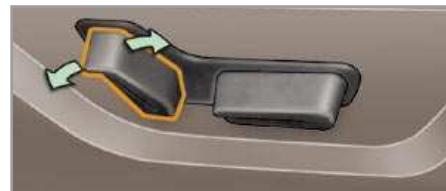
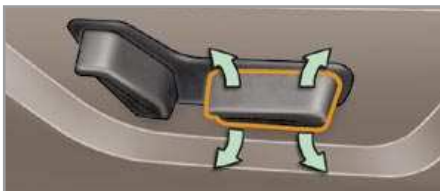
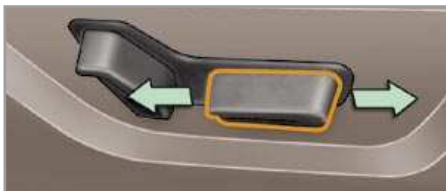
#### Manual adjustments

» 57



#### Electric adjustments

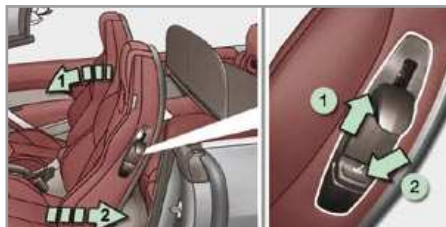
» 58



## SIT COMFORTABLY

### Front seats

#### Electric access to the rear seats



1. Control for release of the seat back and automatic forward movement of the seat.
2. Control for return of the seat to the initial position.

» 59



#### Other functions available...

Storing of driving positions (driver's electric seat).

» 61

"AIRWAVE" system.

Heated seats.

» 60

### Steering wheel adjustment



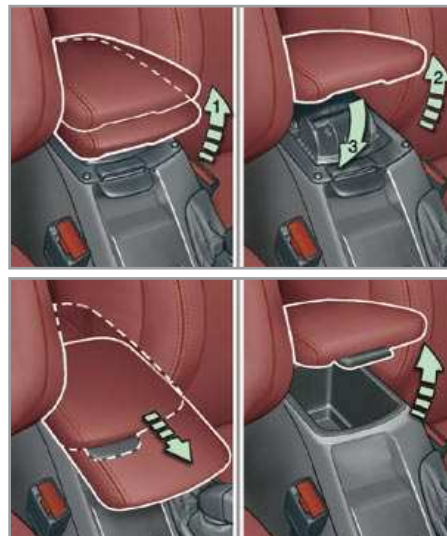
1. Release the adjustment mechanism.
2. Adjust for height and reach.
3. Lock the adjustment mechanism.



As a safety precaution, these operations must only be carried out when stationary.

» 64

### Lockable front armrest



For your comfort, the height and the longitudinal position of the front armrest can be adjusted.

It also offers a storage compartment. As a security measure when in the "cabriolet" configuration, this is locked at the same time as the rest of the vehicle, using the remote control or the key only.

» 91

## SITTING COMFORTABLY

### Door mirrors

#### Adjustment



- A. Selection of the mirror to be adjusted.
- B. Adjustment of the position of the mirror in all four directions.
- C. De-selection of the mirror.

» 62



#### Other functions available...

Folding/Unfolding.  
Automatic tilting of the mirror in reverse gear for parking.

» 63

### Rear view mirror

#### Manual day/night model



- 1. Selection of the "day" position of the mirror.
- 2. Adjustment of the mirror.

» 63



#### Automatic day/night model

- A. Detection of light level of the automatic day/night mode.
- B. Adjustment of the mirror.

» 64

### Front seat belts



- 1. Position the strap.
- 2. Fasten the buckle.
- 3. Check the fastening by pulling the strap.

» 101

# FAMILIARISATION

## SEEING CLEARLY

### Lighting



#### Ring A

- 0** Lighting off.
- AUTO** Automatic illumination of headlamps.
-  Sidelamps.
-  Dipped/main beam headlamps.

#### Ring B

-  Front and rear foglamps.

» 80

### Direction indicators



Raise or lower the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance; the corresponding direction indicators will flash until the stalk is moved from this position.

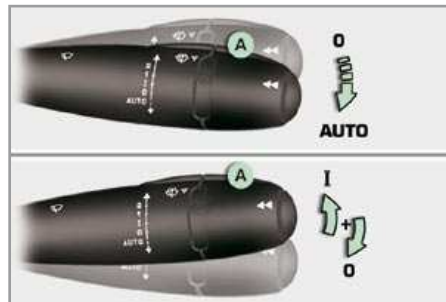
#### "Motorway" function

Press the lighting stalk up or down once, without passing the point of resistance; the corresponding direction indicators will flash three times.

The use of this function is available regardless of the speed, but you will find it particularly useful when changing lane on fast roads.

» 95

### Wipers



#### Stalk A: windscreen wipers

» 85

#### Switching on "AUTO"

☞ Press the stalk down and release it.

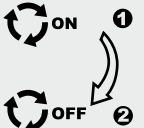
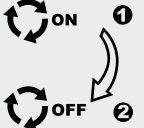
#### Switching off "AUTO"

☞ Push the stalk up and return it to position "0".

» 86

## VENTILATION

### Recommended interior settings

| I require...            | Manual Air Conditioning                                                           |                                                                                   |                                                                                    |                                                                                     |            |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
|                         | Air distribution                                                                  | Air flow                                                                          | Air recirculation/<br>Intake of outside air                                        | Temperature                                                                         | Manual A/C |
| HOT                     |  |  |  |  | —          |
| COLD                    |  |  |  |  | ON         |
| DEMISTING<br>DEFROSTING |  |  |  |  | ON         |

### Digital air conditioning

We recommend use of the fully automatic mode by pressing the **"AUTO"** button. In the "cabriolet" configuration, the system automatically adapts to the exterior climatic conditions.

## MONITORING

### Instrument panel



- A.** With the ignition on, the needle should indicate the level of fuel remaining.
- B.** With the engine running, its associated low level warning lamp should go off.
- C.** With the ignition on, the oil level indicator should display that the level is OK or correct, according to version, for a few seconds.

If the levels are not correct, top up the levels which are low.

» 19

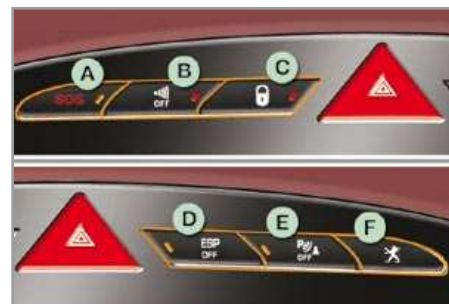
### Warning lamps



- 1.** With the ignition on, the orange and red warning lamps come on.
  - 2.** With the engine running, these warning lamps should go off.
- If warning lamps remain on, refer to the page concerned.

» 23

### Switch panel

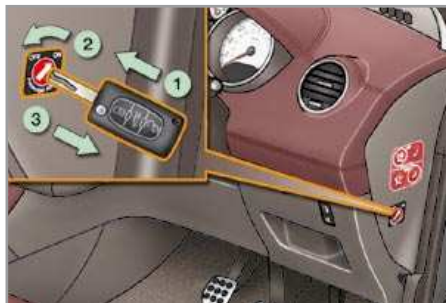


Illumination of the indicator lamp indicates the status of the corresponding function.

- A.** Emergency call in progress.  
» 169
- B.** Deactivation of the alarm volumetric monitoring.  
» 70
- C.** Central locking.  
» 75
- D.** Deactivation of the ESP/ASR system.  
» 99
- E.** Deactivation of the front and rear parking sensors.  
» 124
- F.** Access to PEUGEOT services.  
» 169

## PASSENGER SAFETY

### Passenger's front airbag



1. Insert the key.
2. Select position:  
**"OFF"** (deactivated), with "rear facing" child seat,  
**"ON"** (activated), with front passenger or "forwards facing" child seat.
3. Remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.

» 104

### Seat belts and passenger's front airbag

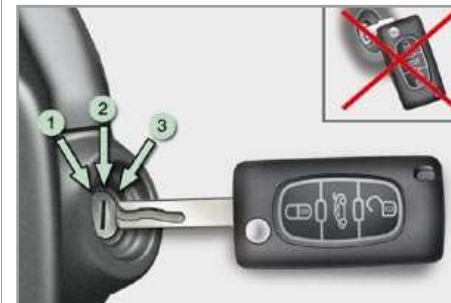


- A. Front and/or rear seat belts not fastened/unfastened warning lamp.
- B. Front left seat belt warning lamp.
- C. Front right seat belt warning lamp.
- D. Rear right seat belt warning lamp.
- E. Rear left seat belt warning lamp.
- F. Passenger's front airbag deactivated warning lamp.
- G. Passenger's front airbag activated warning lamp.

» 101, 105

## START

### Ignition switch



1. **Stop** position.
2. **Ignition on (Running)** position.
3. **Starting** position.

**i** Avoid attaching any heavy objects to the key which would weigh down on its shaft in the ignition switch; this could cause a malfunction.

» 68

## DRIVING SAFELY

### Speed limiter "LIMIT"



1. Limiter mode Selection/Off.
2. Decreasing the programmed value.
3. Increasing the programmed value.
4. Speed limiter On/Off.

The values must be set with the engine running.

▶▶ 120

### Cruise control "CRUISE"



1. Cruise control mode Selection/Off.
2. Programming a speed/Decreasing of the programmed value.
3. Programming a speed/Increasing of the programmed value.
4. Cruise control Off/Resume.

In order to be programmed or activated, the vehicle speed must be higher than 25 mph (40 km/h), with at least fourth gear engaged on the manual gearbox (second gear for the automatic gearbox).

▶▶ 122

### Display in the instrument panel



The cruise control or speed limiter mode appears in the instrument panel when it is selected.



**Cruise control**



**Speed limiter**

## PETROL - DIESEL MANUAL OR AUTOMATIC GEARBOX INSTRUMENT PANELS



Panel grouping together the vehicle operation indication dials and warning lamps.

### Dials

1. **Rev counter.**  
Indicates the speed of rotation of the engine (x 1 000 rpm).
2. **Coolant temperature.**  
Indicates the temperature of the engine coolant (°Celsius).
3. **Fuel level.**  
Indicates the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.
4. **Vehicle speed.**  
Indicates the current speed of the moving vehicle (mph or km/h).

5. **Screen.**
6. **Control button.**  
Recalls the service information.  
Resets the function to zero (trip distance recorder or service indicator).
7. **Instrument panel lighting dimmer.**  
Adjusts the brightness of the lighting of the instruments and controls.



For more information, refer to the paragraph relating to the button or function and its associated display.

### Displays



- A. **Speed limiter**  
(mph or km/h) or  
**Cruise control.**
- B. **Gear shift indicator.**
- C. **Automatic gearbox.**
- D. **Trip distance recorder.**  
(miles or km)
- E. **Service indicator.**  
(miles or km) then,  
**engine oil level indicator**  
then  
**distance recorder.**  
(miles or km)  
These three functions are displayed in succession when the ignition is switched on.

# 1 INSTRUMENTS and CONTROLS

## PETROL - DIESEL MANUAL OR AUTOMATIC GEARBOX INSTRUMENT PANELS



Panel grouping together the vehicle operation indication dials and warning lamps.

### Dials

#### 1. Rev counter.

Indicates the speed of rotation of the engine (x 1 000 rpm).

#### 2. Coolant temperature.

Indicates the temperature of the engine coolant (°Celsius).

#### 3. Fuel level.

Indicates the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.

#### 4. Vehicle speed.

Indicates the current speed of the moving vehicle (mph or km/h).

#### 5. Small screen.

#### 6. Central screen.

#### 7. Control button.

Starts a manual CHECK and recalls the service information.

Resets the function to zero (trip distance recorder or service indicator).

#### 8. Instrument panel lighting dimmer

Adjusts the brightness of the lighting of the instruments and controls.



For more information, refer to the paragraph which relates to the button or function and its associated display.

## Displays



#### A. Trip distance recorder.

(miles or km)

#### B. Distance recorder.

(miles or km)

#### C. Engine oil level indicator, service indicator.

(miles or km)

These two functions are displayed when the ignition is switched on, then disappear after a few seconds.

The following functions are displayed in accordance with the selection.

- **Warning lamps/CHECK.**
- **Tyre under-inflation detection.**
- **Speed limiter/Cruise control.**
- **Gear shift indicator.**
- **Automatic gearbox.**
- **Navigation - Guidance/Trip computer.**

## PETROL - DIESEL MANUAL OR AUTOMATIC GEARBOX PEUGEOT CONNECT MEDIA INSTRUMENT PANELS



Panel grouping together the vehicle operation indication dials and warning lamps.

### Dials

#### 1. Rev counter.

Indicates the speed of rotation of the engine (x 1 000 rpm).

#### 2. Coolant temperature.

Indicates the temperature of the engine coolant (°Celsius).

#### 3. Fuel level.

Indicates the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.

#### 4. Vehicle speed.

Indicates the current speed of the moving vehicle (mph or km/h).

#### 5. Small screen.

#### 6. Central screen.

#### 7. Control button.

Starts a manual CHECK and recalls the service information.

Resets the function to zero (trip distance recorder or service indicator).

#### 8. Instrument panel lighting dimmer.

Adjusts the brightness of the lighting of the instruments and controls.



For further information, refer to the paragraph which relates to the button or function and its associated display.

### Displays



#### A. Trip distance recorder.

(miles or km)

#### B. Distance recorder.

(miles or km)

#### C. Engine oil level indicator, service indicator.

(miles or km)

These two functions are displayed when the ignition is switched on, then disappear after a few seconds.

The following functions are displayed in accordance with the selection.

- **Warning lamps/CHECK.**
- **Tyre under-inflation detection.**
- **Speed limiter/Cruise control.**
- **Gear shift indicator.**
- **Automatic gearbox.**
- **Navigation - Guidance/Trip computer.**
- **Vehicle parameters.**

# 1 INSTRUMENTS and CONTROLS

Instrument panel navigator associated with the Peugeot Connect Media



This group of buttons permits:

- **when stationary**, configuration of the vehicle's equipment and the central screen settings (language, units...),
- **while driving**, scrolling through the active functions (trip computer, navigation...).

## Controls

There are four buttons to control the instrument panel large screen:

1. access the main menu, confirm the selection,
2. move up through the menu,
3. move down through the menu,
4. return to the previous screen, exit from the menu.



The main menu and its associated functions can only be accessed when stationary, via buttons 1 to 4.

A message appears in the central screen, above a certain speed threshold, indicating that the main menu cannot be displayed.

Trip computer information can only be displayed while driving, using buttons 2 and 3 (refer to the "Trip computer" section).

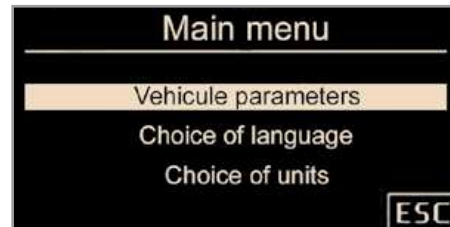
## Main menu

☞ Press button 1 to open the main menu and select one of the following functions:

- "Vehicle parameters",
- "Choice of language",
- "Choice of units".

☞ Press button 2 or 3 to move on the screen.

☞ Press button 1 again to confirm the selection.



## Vehicle parameters

This menu allows you to activate or deactivate certain driving and comfort equipment:

- selective unlocking (refer to the "Access" section),
- guide-me-home and welcome lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- interior mood lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- daytime running lamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- directional headlamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- rear parking sensors (refer to the "Driving" section).

## Choice of language

This menu allows you to select the language used by the screen: Deutsch, English, Español, Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Portugues, Türkçe\*.

## Choice of units

This menu allows you to select the units: temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit) and fuel consumption (mpg, km/l or l/100 km).

\* According to country.

## Indicator and warning lamps

Visual indicators informing the driver that a system is in operation (operation or deactivation indicator lamps) or of the occurrence of a fault (warning lamp).

### When the ignition is switched on

The warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

When the engine is started, these warning lamps should switch off.

If they remain on, before moving off, consult the warning lamp concerned.

### Associated warnings

The switching on of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.



The warning lamps may come on continuously or flash.

Certain warning lamps may come on in two different modes. Only by relating the type of lighting to the operating status of the vehicle can it be ascertained whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred.



### Operation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has come into operation.

### Common operation indicator lamps



Left-hand direction indicator.



Dipped beam headlamps.



Main beam headlamps.



Parking brake applied.



Right-hand direction indicator.



Front foglamps.



Rear foglamp.



Diesel engine pre-heating.

Wait until this has gone out before operating the starter.

# 1 INSTRUMENTS and CONTROLS

## Specific operation indicator lamps

The other indicator lamps appear on the large screen, located in the centre of the instrument panel.



### Automatic locking.

If this is displayed, it indicates that you have activated automatic locking of the doors and boot while driving.



### Automatic rain sensitive wipers.

If this is displayed, it indicates that you have activated automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers.



### Automatic illumination of headlamps.

If this is displayed, it indicates that you have activated automatic illumination of headlamps.



### Speed limiter.

If this is displayed, it indicates that you have activated the speed limiter mode.



If this is displayed, it indicates that you can set the speed limiter speed value to be stored.



### Cruise control.

If this is displayed, it indicates that you have activated the cruise control mode.



If this is displayed it indicates that you can set the cruise control speed value to be stored.

## Automatic gearbox.



This display indicates the position that you have selected on the gear selection gate (P, R, N or D).



This display indicates the gear engaged in the automatic or manual operation programme.



This display indicates the operating programme selected (automatic, sport, snow or manual).

### Deactivation warning lamps

If one of the following warning lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally.



### Common deactivation warning lamps



#### Passenger's airbag system deactivation.

The passenger's airbag system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.

A specific control switch, located on the passenger's side of the dashboard, permits deactivation of the system. This is confirmed by continuous lighting of this warning lamp on the instrument panel or on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display.



#### Dynamic stability control (ESP/ASR) deactivation

The ESP/ASR system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.



A specific button, located on the dashboard, permits deactivation of the system. This is confirmed by continuous lighting of this warning lamp and of the indicator lamp on the button.

From approximately 30 mph (50 km/h), the system is reactivated automatically.

### Specific deactivation warning lamps



The other warning lamps appear on the large screen, located in the centre of the instrument panel.

MAN



#### Automatic locking.

If this is displayed, it indicates that you have deactivated the automatic locking of the doors and boot while driving.

MAN



#### Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers.

If this is displayed, it indicates that you have deactivated automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers.

MAN



#### Automatic illumination of headlamps.

If this is displayed, it indicates that you have deactivated automatic illumination of headlamps.



SS  
mph

#### Speed limiter.

If this is displayed, it indicates that you have deactivated the speed limiter.



70  
mph

#### Cruise control.

If this is displayed, it indicates that you have deactivated the cruise control.

## Warning lamps

When the engine is running or the vehicle is moving, the lighting of one of the following warning lamps indicates the occurrence of a fault requiring action by the driver.



Any fault resulting in the display of a warning lamp must be investigated further by reading the associated message in the multifunction screen.

Should you encounter any problems, do not hesitate to contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

## Common warning lamps

### Central alert.



Lighting is associated with the display of another warning lamp:

- punctured wheel,
- braking,
- power steering,
- engine oil pressure,
- coolant temperature,

requiring you to stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.



### Service.

If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a problem in one of the systems which does not have a specific warning lamp.

In order to identify it, see the message in the multifunction screen.

It comes on temporarily for minor faults which can be resolved by the driver.

Minor faults may be connected with:

- opening the doors, boot and bonnet,
- the remote control battery,
- the engine oil level,
- the screenwash fluid level,
- tyre pressures,
- saturation of the particle emission filter (Diesel),

For other situations, involving major faults, the warning lamp comes on permanently; such faults should be checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

### Braking.



If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in one of the braking systems:

- significant drop in the fluid level in the system,
- electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) fault (the ABS warning lamp comes on as well),

stop the vehicle immediately as soon as it is safe to do so.

When the vehicle is moving, check that the parking brake is fully released.



### Anti-lock braking system (ABS).

If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the anti-lock braking system.

However, this does not prevent operation of the vehicle's servo-assisted braking.



### Dynamic stability control (ESP/ASR).

The ESP/ASR system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.

Unless the system has been deactivated, if this warning lamp and the indicator lamp on the button come on continuously, this indicates the occurrence of a fault in the ESP/ASR system.



### Foot on brake.

Press the brake pedal to start the engine with the automatic gearbox.



### Engine self-diagnostic system.

If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the engine management system.

If it flashes, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the emission control system.



### Maximum coolant temperature.

If this comes on, it indicates that the temperature in the cooling system is too high. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.



### Low fuel level.

When this first comes on, you have approximately **6 litres** of fuel remaining in the tank.

Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

Until sufficient fuel has been added, this warning lamp comes on again every the ignition is switched on, along with an audible signal and an alert message. When driving, this audible signal and the display of the message are repeated with increasing frequency, as the fuel level drops towards "0".

Capacity of the tank: approximately **60 litres**.



Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel, this could damage the emission control and injection systems.

### Specific warning lamps



### Engine oil pressure.

If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the engine lubrication system. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.



### Battery charge.

If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the battery charging circuit (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt...).



### Door open.

A door or the boot is open:

- if the speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h), this warning lamp comes on continuously.
- if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h), this warning lamp comes on continuously, accompanied by an audible signal.



### Airbags.

If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in one of the airbag, roll-over hoop or seat belt pretensioner systems.



### Seat belt not fastened/unfastened.

If this comes on, it indicates that the driver and/or the front passenger has not fastened or has unfastened their seat belt.

It also indicates that one or more rear passengers have unfastened their seat belt.



### Water in Diesel\*.

If this comes on, it indicates the presence of water in the Diesel filter.

There is a risk of damage to the injection system on Diesel engines.

\* According to country.

# 1 INSTRUMENTS and CONTROLS

## Specific warning lamps



### Directional headlamps.

If this flashes, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the directional headlamps system.

The other warning lamps appear on the large screen, located in the centre of the instrument panel.

Depending on the seriousness of the fault, they may be displayed in orange or red.



The display of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.



Certain warning lamps may be linked with those of the instrument panel.

If they are linked with the **STOP** warning lamp, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.



### Service.

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in one of the following:

- the engine management system,
- the emission control system.



### Engine self- diagnostic system.

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the engine management system.



### Battery charge.

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the battery charging circuit (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt...).



### Engine oil pressure.

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the engine lubrication system. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.



### Engine oil level.

If this is displayed, it indicates an insufficient level of oil in the engine. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.



### Coolant temperature.

If this is displayed, it indicates that the temperature in the coolant system is too high. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

**Coolant level.**

If this is displayed, it indicates an insufficient level of coolant in the system. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

**Screenwash fluid level.**

If this is displayed, following an action on the wiper stalk, it indicates that the fluid level is low.

Fill the screenwash/headlamp wash fluid reservoir when you next stop.

**Fuel level.**

When this first comes on, you have approximately **6 litres** of fuel left in the tank.

It is imperative that you refuel to avoid running out of fuel.

Until sufficient fuel has been added, this warning lamp comes on again every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and an alert message. When driving, this audible signal and the display of the message are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards **"0"**.

Capacity of the tank: approximately **60 litres**.



Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel, this could damage the emission control and injection systems.

**Electronic immobiliser.**

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the electronic engine immobiliser system or that the remote control battery is flat.

**Door open.**

A door or the boot is open:

- if the speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h), this warning lamp is displayed in orange,
- if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h), this warning lamp is displayed in red.

**Airbags.**

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in one of the airbag, roll-over hoop or pretensioning seat belt systems.

**Braking.**

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in one of the braking systems:

- significant drop in the fluid level in the system,
- electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) fault (the ABS warning lamp comes on as well).

Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

If the vehicle is moving, check that the parking brake is fully released.

**Parking brake.**

If this is displayed, while the vehicle is moving, it indicates that the parking brake has not been fully released.

**Anti-lock braking system (ABS).**

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the anti-lock braking system.

However, this does not prevent operation of the vehicle's servo-assisted braking.

**Dynamic stability control (ESP/ASR).**

The ESP/ASR system is put into service automatically when the vehicle is started.

Unless the system has been deactivated, if this warning lamp and the indicator lamp on the button come on, this indicates the occurrence of a fault in the ESP/ASR system.

**Ice warning.**

If this is displayed, it indicates that there is risk of the formation of ice on the road below a temperature of 3 °C.

Drive carefully.

# 1 INSTRUMENTS and CONTROLS



## Power steering.

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the power steering. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.



## Under-inflated tyre.

If this is displayed, it indicates low pressure in one or more wheels.

Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible.



## Automatic headlamp adjustment.

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the automatic headlamp adjustment.



## Automatic gearbox.

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the automatic gearbox. The gearbox will then operate in down-grade mode, locked on 3rd gear.

It may also be displayed if a door is opened.



## Punctured tyre.

If this is displayed, it indicates that one or more wheels are punctured. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Change the damaged wheel and have it repaired by a PEUGEOT dealer.



## Water in Diesel\*.

If this is displayed, it indicates the presence of water in the Diesel filter.

There is a risk of damage to the injection system on Diesel engines.



## Position P or N.

If this is displayed, it indicates that the gear lever must be placed in position **P** or **N** in order to start the engine.



## Tyre under-inflation detection.

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault on one of the sensors or in the tyre under-inflation detection system.

It may also indicate the absence of a sensor when the spare wheel, which does not have a sensor, is fitted in place of a punctured wheel.



## Particle emission filter (Diesel).

If this is displayed, linked with the service warning lamp, it indicates the start of saturation of the particle emission filter or a low Diesel additive reservoir level.

As soon as traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the service warning lamp is switched off.

If the service warning lamp is still displayed, the additive level is low. Have it topped up by a PEUGEOT dealer without delay.



## Invalid value.

If this is displayed, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the programme of the automatic gearbox.



## Automatic lighting.

If this comes on, it indicates the occurrence of a fault in the automatic lighting.

Use the other positions of the lighting stalk to control the lighting manually.



## Visual and/or audible parking sensors.

If this comes on, in forward and/or reverse gear, it indicates a fault in the parking sensor system.

\* According to country.

### Coolant temperature indicator



With the engine running, when the needle is:

- in zone **A**, the temperature is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature is too high; the max temperature warning lamp **1** and the central **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.

**You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.**

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

After driving for a few minutes, the temperature and pressure in the cooling system increase.

To top up the level:

- ☞ wait for the engine to cool,
- ☞ unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop,
- ☞ when the pressure has dropped, remove the cap,
- ☞ top up the level to the "MAX" mark.

# 1 INSTRUMENTS and CONTROLS

## Engine oil level indicator

System which informs the driver whether the engine oil level is correct or not.



This information is indicated for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the service information.

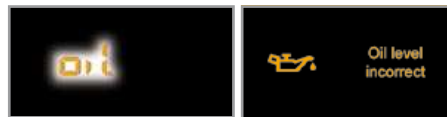


The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 15 minutes.

### Oil level correct



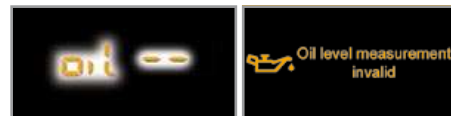
### Lack of oil



This is indicated by the flashing of "OIL", linked with the service warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

If the lack of oil is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, it is essential that the level is topped up to prevent damage to the engine.

## Oil level indicator fault



This is indicated by the flashing of "OIL--". Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

## Dipstick

Refer to the "Checks" section to locate the dipstick and the oil filler cap on your engine.



There are 2 marks on the dipstick:

- **A** = max; never exceed this level (risk of damage to the engine),
- **B** = min; top up the level via the oil filler cap, using the grade of oil suited to your engine.

### Service indicator

System which informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

The point at which the service is due is calculated from the last indicator zero reset. It is determined by two parameters:

- the distance travelled,
- the time elapsed since the last service.



### More than 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

When the ignition is switched on, no service information appears in the screen.

### Between 600 miles (1 000 km) and 1 800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations comes on. The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.

**Example:** 1 700 miles (2 800 km) remain before the next service is due.

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner goes off**; the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. The screen then indicates the total and trip distances.



### Less than 600 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

**Example:** 400 miles (900 km) remain before the next service is due.

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on** to indicate that a service must be carried out soon.



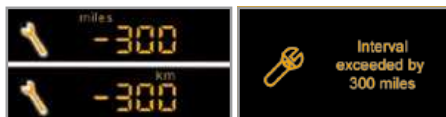
# 1 INSTRUMENTS and CONTROLS

## Service overdue

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.

**Example:** the service is overdue by 300 miles (300 km).

For 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



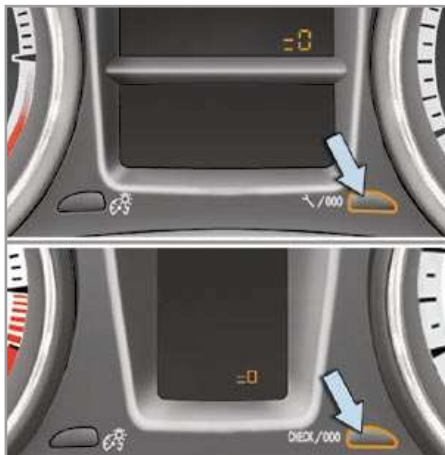
5 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on.**



The distance remaining may be weighted by the time factor, depending on the driver's driving habits.

Therefore, the spanner may also come on if you have exceeded the two year service interval.

## Service indicator zero reset



After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.

The procedure for resetting to zero is as follows:

- ☞ switch off the ignition,
- ☞ press and hold the "**.../000**" button on the right of the instrument panel,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a count-down,
- ☞ when the instrument panel central screen indicates "**=0**", release the button; the spanner disappears from the screen.



Following this operation, if you wish to disconnect the battery, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the zero reset to be registered.

## Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.

This information appears, depending on version, when running through the manual check procedure.

- ☞ Briefly press the "**.../000**" button on the right of the instrument panel.

The service information is displayed for a few seconds on the instrument panel central screen, then disappears.

## Manual Check

This function allows you to check the status of the vehicle (reminder of the alert warnings and of the state of the configurable functions - "activated" or "deactivated") and the service information.



- ☞ With the engine running, to start a manual check, briefly press the "CHECK/000" button on the instrument panel.

If no faults have been detected, "CHECK OK" appears in the instrument panel central screen.

If a "minor" fault has been detected, the warning lamp concerned then "CHECK OK" appear in the instrument panel central screen. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

If a "major" fault has been detected, only the warning lamps concerned appear in the instrument panel central screen. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

## Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.



### Total distance recorder

Measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.

### Trip distance recorder

Measures a distance travelled since it was reset to zero by the driver.



- ☞ With the ignition on, press and hold this button until zeros appear.

# 1 INSTRUMENTS and CONTROLS

## Lighting dimmer

Permits manual adjustment of the brightness of the instruments and controls to suit the ambient light level. Only operates when the vehicle lighting is on, with the exception of the daytime running lamps.



## Deactivation

When the vehicle lighting is off, or in day mode on vehicles fitted with daytime running lamps, pressing the button does not have any effect.

## Activation

- ☞ Press the button to change the brightness of the instruments and controls.
- ☞ When the lighting reaches the minimum setting, release the button, then press again to increase it.
- or
- ☞ When the lighting reaches the maximum setting, release the button, then press again to reduce it.
- ☞ When the lighting reaches the level of brightness required, release the button.

## MONOCHROME SCREEN C (WITH PEUGEOT CONNECT SOUND)



### Displays on the screen

This displays the following information:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- status of the openings (doors, boot...),
- visual parking sensor information,
- audio sources (radio, CD...),
- trip computer (refer to the end of the section).

Warning messages (e.g.: "Emission control system faulty") or information messages (e.g.: "Automatic headlamp lighting activated") may appear temporarily. These can be cleared by pressing the **"ESC"** button.

## Controls



From the control panel of your Peugeot Connect Sound, you can:

- ☞ press the **"MENU"** button to gain access to the **main menu**,
- ☞ press the **"▲"** or **"▼"** buttons to scroll through the items on the screen,
- ☞ press the **"MODE"** button to change the permanent application (trip computer, audio source...),
- ☞ press the **"◀"** or **"▶"** buttons to change a setting value,
- ☞ press the **"OK"** button to confirm,
- or
- ☞ press the **"ESC"** button to abandon the operation in progress.

## Main menu



- ☞ Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**:
  - audio functions,
  - diagnosis vehicle,
  - personalisation-configuration,
  - telephone (hands-free kit).
- ☞ Press the **"▲"** or **"▼"** buttons to select the menu required, then confirm by pressing the **"OK"** button.



### "Audio functions" menu

With the Peugeot Connect Sound switched on, once this menu has been selected you can activate or deactivate the functions linked with use of the radio (RDS, REG, RadioText) or the CD (introsan, shuffle, CD repeat).

For more information on the "Audio functions" application, refer to the Peugeot Connect Sound part of the "Audio and Telematics" section.



### "Diagnosis vehicle" menu

Once this menu has been selected, you can consult the alert log.

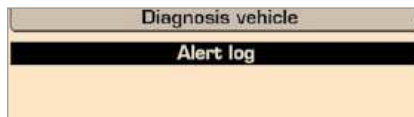
#### Alert log

This summarises the active warning messages, displaying them in succession in the multifunction screen.

- ✎ Press the **"MENU"** button to gain access to the main menu.
- ✎ Press the arrows, then the **"OK"** button to select the **"Diagnosis vehicle"** menu.



- ✎ On the **"Diagnosis vehicle"** menu, select the following application:



### "Personalisation-Configuration" menu



Once this menu has been selected, you have access to the following functions:

- define the vehicle parameters,
- display configuration,
- choice of language.

#### Define the vehicle parameters

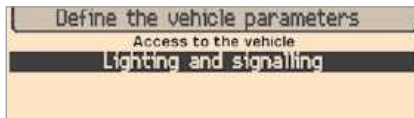
Once this menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment:

- selective unlocking (refer to the "Access" section),
- "guide-me-home" and welcome lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- interior mood lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- daytime running lamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- rear parking assistance (refer to the "Driving" section).

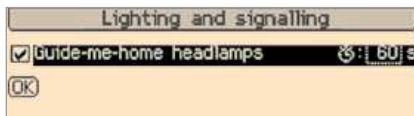


Example: setting of the duration of the "guide-me-home" lighting

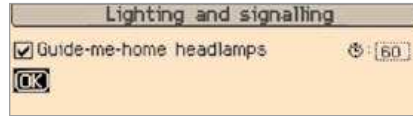
- Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the "OK" button to select the menu required.



- Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the "OK" button to select the "Guide-me-home headlamps" line.



- Press the "◀" or "▶" buttons to set the value required (15, 30 or 60 seconds), then press the "OK" button to confirm.



- Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the "OK" button to select the "OK" box and confirm or press the "ESC" button to cancel.

## Display configuration

Once this menu has been selected, you have access to the following settings:

- brightness-video setting,
- date and time setting,
- choice of units.

## Choice of language

Once this menu has been selected, you can change the language used by the display (Deutsch, English, Espanol, Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Portugues, Portugues-Brasil, Türkçe\*).



## "Telephone" menu

With the Peugeot Connect Sound switched on, once this menu has been selected you can configure your Bluetooth hands-free kit (pairing), consult the various telephone directories (calls log, services...) and manage your communications (pick up, hang up, call waiting, secret mode...).

For more information on the "Telephone" application, refer to the Peugeot Connect Sound part of the "Audio and Telematics" section.



For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must be done only when stationary.

\* According to country.

## 2 MULTIFUNCTION SCREENS

### 16/9 RETRACTABLE COLOUR SCREEN (WITH PEUGEOT CONNECT NAVIGATION)



#### Displays on the screen

Once unfolded, it displays the following information automatically and directly:

- time,
- date,
- altitude,
- ambient temperature (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- openings check,
- visual parking sensor information
- the sequences of opening and closing the roof,
- audio functions,
- satellite navigation system information.

### Controls



From the Peugeot Connect Navigation control panel, to select one of the applications:

- ☞ press the dedicated **"RADIO"**, **"MUSIC"**, **"NAV"**, **"TRAFFIC"**, **"SETUP"** or **"PHONE"** button to gain access to the corresponding menu,
- ☞ turn the navigator to move the selection,
- ☞ press the navigator to confirm the selection,
- or
- ☞ press the **"ESC"** button to abandon the current operation and return to the previous display.

For more information on these applications, refer to the Peugeot Connect Navigation part of the "Audio and Telematics" section.

**i** For operation of the retractable screen (opening, closing, adjustment of the position, etc.), refer to the paragraph "Access to the retractable screen".

## "SETUP" menu



Press the **"SETUP"** button to gain access to the **"SETUP"** menu. This allows you to select from the following functions:

- "Languages",
- "Date and time",
- "Display",
- "Vehicle",
- "Units",
- "System".

### Language

This menu allows you to select the language used by the display: Deutsch, English, Espanol, Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Polski, Portugues, Türkçe\*.

### Date and time

This menu allows you to set the date and time, the format of the date and the format of the time (refer to the Peugeot Connect Navigation part of the "Audio and Telematics" section).

### Display

This menu allows you to set the brightness of the screen, the screen colour scheme and the colour of the map (day/night or auto mode).

### Vehicle

This menu allows you to activate or deactivate certain driving and comfort equipment:

- selective unlocking (refer to the "Access" section),
- guide-me-home and welcome lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- interior mood lighting (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- daytime running lamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- directional headlamps (refer to the "Visibility" section),
- rear parking sensors (refer to the "Driving" section).

### Units

This menu allows you to select the units: temperature (°C or °F) and fuel consumption (mpg, km/l or l/100).

### System

This menu allows you to restore the factory configuration, display the software version and activate scrolling text.



For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must be done only when stationary.

\* According to country.

## 2 MULTIFUNCTION SCREENS

### 16/9 HIGH DEFINITION RETRACTABLE COLOUR SCREEN (WITH PEUGEOT CONNECT MEDIA)



#### Displays on the screen

Once unfolded, it displays the following information automatically and directly:

- time,
- date,
- altitude,
- ambient temperature (the value displayed flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- audio functions,
- visual parking sensor information,
- the sequences of opening and closing the roof,
- telephone and address book information,
- satellite navigation system information.

### Controls



From the Peugeot Connect Media control panel, to select one of the applications:

- ☞ press the dedicated **"RADIO"**, **"MEDIA"**, **"NAV"**, **"TRAFFIC"**, **"ADDR BOOK"** or **"SETUP"** button for access to the corresponding menu,
- ☞ turn the navigator to move the selection,
- ☞ press the navigator to confirm the selection,
- or
- ☞ press the **"ESC"** button to abandon the current operation and return to the previous display.

For more information on these applications, refer to the Peugeot Connect Media part of the "Audio and Telematics" section.

**i** For operation of the retractable screen (opening, closing, adjustment of the position, etc.), refer to the paragraph "Access to the retractable screen".

## "SETUP" menu



Press the **"SETUP"** button to gain access to the **"SETUP"** menu. This allows you to select from the following functions:

- "Language and speech",
- "Date and time",
- "Display",
- "Units",
- "System".

### Language and speech

This menu allows you to:

- select the language used by the display (Deutsch, English, Espanol, Français, Italiano, Nederlands, Polski, Portugues, Portugues-Brasil, Türkçe\*),
- select the voice recognition parameters (activation/deactivation, advice on use, personal voice programming, etc.),
- set the volume of the voice synthesiser.

### Date and time

This menu allows you to set the date and time, the format of the date and the format of the time (refer to the Peugeot Connect Media part of the "Audio and Telematics" section).



For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

### Display

This menu allows you to set the brightness of the screen, the screen colour scheme and the colour of the map (day/night or auto mode).

### Units

This menu allows you to select the units: temperature (°C or °F) and distance (miles or km).

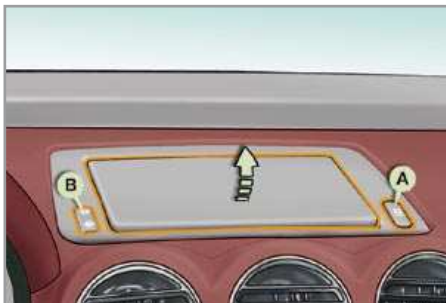
### System

This menu allows you to restore the factory configuration, display the software version and activate scrolling text.

\* According to country.

## 2 MULTIFUNCTION SCREENS

### Access to the retractable screen



This screen is opened and stored automatically.

However, you can also open it, store it and adjust it using the various manual controls:

- opening or storing by means of control **A**,
- angle adjustments by means of control **B**.

It is also fitted with safety auto-reverse protection.

#### Opening the screen

☞ With the screen stored, press control **A** to open it.

The screen opens automatically when the ignition is switched on, when the audio and telematics system is switched on, when an outgoing telephone call is made, when a voice command is given and when a warning message linked with the STOP warning lamp is received.



If you close the screen during operation of the audio and telematics system, it will re-open automatically when an outgoing telephone call is made, when a voice command is given or when a warning message linked with the STOP warning lamp is received.

#### Closing the screen

☞ With the screen open, press control **A** to store it.

The screen is stored automatically when the ignition is switched off, after approximately three seconds, if the audio and telematics system is off.

#### Safety auto-reverse

If the screen meets an obstacle as it opens or closes, the movement stops immediately and is reversed by a few millimetres.

After clearing the obstacle, issue the command required again.



If you wish the screen to open or close automatically when the audio and telematics system is switched on or off, the screen must not be closed when the audio and telematics system is operating.

### Adjusting the position of the screen



When the screen is open, you can adjust it precisely in different ways:

☞ press the corresponding part of control **B** to move the screen towards you or towards the windscreen,

or

☞ push or pull the screen gently by hand.

#### Storing the position of the screen

The system has four pre-set positions in its memory.

Each time the screen is closed, the system stores the last position of the screen.

Each time the screen is re-opened, the system returns the screen to the pre-set position closest to that stored.

## TRIP COMPUTER

System which provides current information concerning the route travelled (range, fuel consumption...).

### Monochrome screen C



### Instrument panel small central screen



### Instrument panel large central screen



Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the trip computer information appears on the multifunction screen or on the central screen in the instrument panel.

### Information displays

With the monochrome screen C or the instrument panel small screen



Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various trip computer tabs in succession.

With the instrument panel large central screen



Press the up and down arrows on the instrument panel **navigator**, associated with Peugeot Connect Media, to display the various trip computer tabs in succession.

## 2 MULTIFUNCTION SCREENS



- The current information tab with:
  - the range,
  - the current fuel consumption,
  - the distance remaining to be travelled.



- The trip "1" tab with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed, for the first trip.



- The trip "2" tab with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed, for the second trip.

- ☞ Pressing the button again takes you to a black screen.  
A further press returns you to the normal display.

### Trip zero reset

**With the monochrome screen C or the instrument panel small screen**



- ☞ When the trip required is displayed, press the button on the end of the **wiper stalk** for more than two seconds.

**With the instrument panel large central screen**



- ☞ When the required trip is displayed, press the **"OK"** button on the instrument panel **navigator**, associated with Peugeot Connect Media, for more than two seconds.

Trips "1" and "2" are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip "1" can be used for daily figures, and trip "2" for monthly figures.

## A few definitions...

**Range**

(miles or km)

This indicates the distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank in relation to the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled.



This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed when it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).



If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

**Current fuel consumption**

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

This is the average fuel consumption during the last few seconds.



This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).

**Average fuel consumption**

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

This is the average fuel consumption since the last trip computer zero reset.

**Average speed**

(mph or km/h)

This is the average speed calculated since the last trip computer zero reset (ignition on).

**Distance travelled**

(miles or km)

This indicates the distance travelled since the last trip computer zero reset.

**Distance remaining to destination**

(miles or km)

This is the distance remaining to be travelled to the final destination. It is calculated instantly by the navigation system, if guidance is activated.

If the distance is not entered, dashes are displayed in place of the digits.



## VENTILATION

### Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

### Air treatment

The incoming air follows various routes depending on the controls selected by the driver:

- direct arrival in the passenger compartment (air intake),
- passage through a heating circuit (heating),
- passage through a cooling circuit (air conditioning).

The temperature control enables you to obtain the level of comfort required by mixing the air of the various circuits.

The air distribution control enables you to diffuse the air in the passenger compartment combining several air vents.

The air flow control enables you to increase or reduce the speed of the ventilation blower.

### Control panel

The controls of this system are grouped together on control panel **A** on the centre console. Depending on the model, the functions offered are:

- the level of comfort required,
- air flow,
- air distribution,
- demisting-defrosting,
- manual or digital air conditioning controls.

### Air distribution

1. Windscreen demisting-defrosting vents.
2. Front side window demisting-defrosting vents.
3. Side adjustable air vents.
4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.
6. Air outlets to the rear footwells.



## RECOMMENDATIONS FOR VENTILATION AND AIR CONDITIONING

In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the guidelines on operation and maintenance below:

- ☞ To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
- ☞ Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the air conditioning system.
- ☞ Operate the air conditioning system for 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- ☞ Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly (refer to the "Checks" section).
- ☞ We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its second special active filter, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
- ☞ To guarantee correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly.
- ☞ If the system does not produce cold air, do not use it and contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

In the "cabriolet" configuration, installing the windstop and using the "AIRWAVE" systems improves comfort.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning permits the recovery of engine power and therefore improvement of the towing capacity.



If the interior temperature remains very high after the vehicle has been parked in the sun for a considerable time, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few minutes.

Place the air flow control at a sufficient level to provide an adequate renewal of air in the passenger compartment.

The air conditioning system does not contain chlorine and does not present any danger to the ozone layer.



The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

## MANUAL AIR CONDITIONING



The air conditioning can only operate with the engine running.

## 1. Temperature adjustment



☞ Turn the dial from blue (cold) to red (hot) to adjust the temperature to your requirements.

## 2. Air flow adjustment



☞ Turn the dial from position 1 to position 5 to obtain a comfortable air flow.



☞ If you place the air flow control in position 0 (deactivation of the system), the temperature is no longer maintained at a comfortable level. However, a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

## 3. Air distribution adjustment



Windscreen and side windows.



Windscreen, side windows and footwells.



Footwells.  
(vents closed)



Central and side vents.



The air distribution can be adapted by placing the dial in an intermediate position.

## 4. Air intake/Air recirculation

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of condensation on the windscreen and side windows.

The recirculation of interior air insulates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and smoke.

Return to exterior air intake as soon as possible to prevent deterioration of the air quality and the formation of condensation.



☞ Press the button to recirculate the interior air. The indicator lamp comes on to confirm this.

☞ Press the button again to permit the intake of exterior air. The indicator lamp switches off to confirm this.

## 5. Air conditioning On/Off



The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3 °C.

### Switching on

- ☞ Press the **"A/C"** button, the button's indicator lamp comes on.



The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment control **2** is in position **"0"**.

### Switching off

- ☞ Press the **"A/C"** button again, the button's indicator lamp goes off.

Switching off may affect comfort levels (humidity, condensation).

## FRONT DEMIST - DEFROST



These markings on the control panel indicate the control positions for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows.

### With manual air conditioning

- ☞ Put the temperature, air flow and distribution controls to the dedicated marked position.
- ☞ Put the air intake control to the "Exterior air intake" position (indicator lamp on the control off).
- ☞ Switch on the air conditioning by pressing the **"A/C"** button; the warning lamp in the button comes on.

## REAR SCREEN DEMIST/DEFROST



The control button is located on the heating or air conditioning system control panel.

### Switching on

The rear screen demist/defrost can only operate when the engine is running.

- ☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and the exterior mirrors. The indicator lamp associated with the button comes on.

### Switching off

The demist/defrost switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

- ☞ It is possible to stop the demist/defrost operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing the button again. The indicator lamp associated with the button switches off.



If the engine is switched off before the demist/defrost is switched off automatically, demist/defrost will resume next time the engine is switched on.

The demist/defrost is deactivated when the retractable roof is stored in the boot.



- ☞ Switch off the demist/defrost of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as it is no longer needed as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

## 5. Air conditioning On/Off



The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3 °C.

### Switching on

- ☞ Press the **"A/C"** button, the button's indicator lamp comes on.



The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment control **2** is in position **"0"**.

### Switching off

- ☞ Press the **"A/C"** button again, the button's indicator lamp goes off.

Switching off may affect comfort levels (humidity, condensation).

## FRONT DEMIST - DEFROST



These markings on the control panel indicate the control positions for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows.

### With manual air conditioning

- ☞ Put the temperature, air flow and distribution controls to the dedicated marked position.
- ☞ Put the air intake control to the "Exterior air intake" position (indicator lamp on the control off).
- ☞ Switch on the air conditioning by pressing the **"A/C"** button; the warning lamp in the button comes on.

## REAR SCREEN DEMIST/DEFROST



The control button is located on the heating or air conditioning system control panel.

### Switching on

The rear screen demist/defrost can only operate when the engine is running.

- ☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and the exterior mirrors. The indicator lamp associated with the button comes on.

### Switching off

The demist/defrost switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

- ☞ It is possible to stop the demist/defrost operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing the button again. The indicator lamp associated with the button switches off.



If the engine is switched off before the demist/defrost is switched off automatically, demist/defrost will resume next time the engine is switched on.

The demist/defrost is deactivated when the retractable roof is stored in the boot.



- ☞ Switch off the demist/defrost of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as it is no longer needed as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

## DUAL-ZONE DIGITAL AIR CONDITIONING



The air conditioning can only operate with the engine running.

### Automatic operation

#### 1. Automatic comfort programme



- ☞ Press the **"AUTO"** button. The indicator lamp on the button comes on.

We recommend the use of this mode: it permits automatic and optimised adjustment of all of the functions, passenger compartment temperature, air flow, air distribution and air recirculation, in accordance with the comfort value that you have chosen.

This system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with automatic adaptation in the "cabriolet" configuration.



When the engine is cold, to prevent too great a distribution of cold air, the air flow will reach its optimum level gradually.

In cold weather, it favours the distribution of warm air to the windscreen, side windows and footwells only.

#### 2. Driver's side adjustment

#### 3. Passenger side adjustment



The driver and his front passenger can each adjust the temperature to their requirements.

The value indicated on the display corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit.

- ☞ Turn control **2** or **3** to the left or to the right respectively to decrease or increase this value.

A setting around the value 21 provides optimum comfort. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.

You are advised to avoid a left/right setting difference of more than 3.



On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value, there is no need to change the value displayed in order to obtain the comfort required. The system corrects the difference in temperature automatically and as quickly as possible.

#### 4. Automatic visibility programme



The automatic comfort programme may not be sufficient to quickly demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows (humidity, several passengers, ice, etc.).

- ☞ In this case, select the automatic visibility programme.

The system automatically controls the air conditioning, the air flow and the air intake and provides optimum distribution of the ventilation to the windscreen and side windows.

- ☞ To switch it off, press the **"visibility"** button again or press the **"AUTO"** button, the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the indicator lamp in the **"AUTO"** button comes on.

## Manual operation

If you wish, you can make a different choice from that offered by the system by changing a setting. The other functions will still be controlled automatically.

- Pressing the **"AUTO"** button returns the system to completely automatic operation.



For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.

- Turn control **2** or **3** to the left until **"LO"** is displayed or to the right until **"HI"** is displayed.

## 5. Air conditioning On/Off



- Press this button to switch off the air conditioning.

Switching the system off could result in discomfort (humidity, condensation).

- Press this button again to return to automatic operation of the air conditioning. The indicator lamp in the **"A/C"** button comes on.

## 6. Air distribution adjustment



- Press one or more buttons to direct the air flow towards:

- the windscreen and side windows (demisting or defrosting),
- the windscreen, the side windows and the vents,
- the windscreen, the side windows, the vents and the footwells,
- the vents and the footwells,
- the vents,
- the footwells,
- the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells.

## 7. Air flow adjustment



- Turn this control to the left to decrease the air flow or to the right to increase the air flow.

The air flow indicator lamps, between the two fans, come on progressively according to the value requested.

## 8. Air intake/Air recirculation



- Press this button for recirculation of the interior air. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Air recirculation enables the passenger compartment to be isolated from exterior odours and smoke.

- As soon as possible, press this button again to permit the intake of outside air and prevent the formation of condensation. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

## 9. Mono-zone/Dual-zone



- Press this button to equalise the comfort value on the passenger side with that on the driver's side (mono-zone). The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

## Switching the system off

- Turn the air flow control to the left until all of the indicator lamps go off.

This action switches off all of the functions of the system.

Temperature related comfort is no longer guaranteed but a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

- Turn the air flow dial to the right or press the **"AUTO"** button to reactivate the system with the values set before it was switched off.



Avoid prolonged operation in interior air recirculation mode or driving for long periods with the system off (risk of condensation and of deterioration of the air quality).

### FITTING/REMOVING THE WINDSTOP

In the "cabriolet" configuration, the windstop improves comfort in the passenger compartment.

The vertical part of the windstop can be folded down to improve rear visibility during manoeuvres.

It is supplied folded in four.

#### Windstop folded

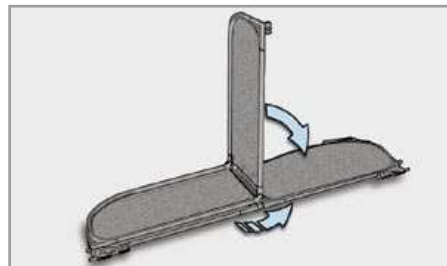


#### Windstop unfolded



### Fitting

- ☞ Unfold each of the two parts fully.



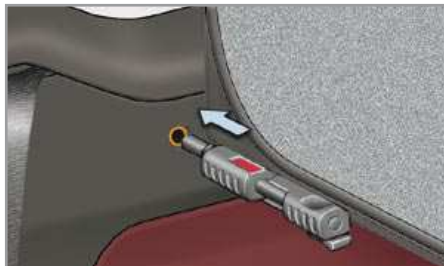
- ☞ Clip the ends of the assembly until a click is heard.
- ☞ Unfold the windstop by opening the two parts to 90° until a click is heard.



- ☞ Unfold the windstop frame guides.
- ☞ Engage the guides in the points located behind each corner of the back of the rear bench seat.



- ☞ Engage the shafts of the windstop frame in the openings in the rear side trim so that the red indicators are concealed.



When installing the windstop for the first time:

- ☞ position a size 10 open-ended spanner on the hexagonal part of the shaft,
- ☞ tighten or slacken without forcing on each side to adjust the depth setting.
- ☞ Lastly, always check that the windstop is retained securely before use in the "cabriolet" configuration.



## Removal

- ☞ Press and pull on the shaft supports to release the shafts from the openings in the rear side trim; the red indicators then become visible.



It is not necessary to remove the windstop when operating the roof.

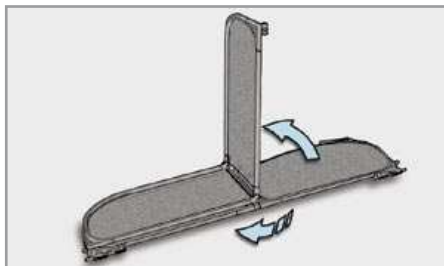
- ☞ Pull the windstop forwards to release the guides from the points, located behind each corner of the back of the rear bench seat.
- ☞ Fold the windstop frame guides.



- ☞ Fold the windstop closing the two large parts on themselves.
- ☞ Unclip each end individually.



- ☞ Fold each of the two parts on themselves.



## Storing



### In the storage box (version equipped with a temporary tyre repair kit)

- ☞ Raise the boot carpet and hook its handle on the boot seal.
- ☞ Store the folded windstop in the corresponding recess in the box.
- ☞ Lower the boot carpet.

### In the boot (version equipped with a spare wheel)

- ☞ Stow the folded windstop securing it using the luggage retaining net.

## FRONT SEATS

Seat with integral head restraint, consisting of a seat cushion and a seat back which can be adjusted to adapt your position for ease of driving and comfort.

### Manual adjustments

#### Forwards-backwards adjustment

- ☞ Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.



#### Driver's or passenger's seat height adjustment

- ☞ Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as necessary, to obtain the position required.



#### Seat back angle adjustment

- ☞ Push the control rearwards.



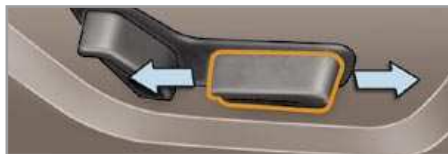
## FRONT SEATS

Seat with integral head restraint, consisting of a seat cushion and a seat back which can be adjusted to adapt your position for ease of driving and comfort.

### Electric adjustments

#### Forwards-backwards adjustment

- ☞ Push the control forwards or rearwards to slide the seat.



#### Seat cushion height and angle adjustment

- ☞ Tilt the rear part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.
- ☞ Tilt the front part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.



The electrical functions of the seat are deactivated approximately one minute after the ignition is switched off.

To reactivate them, switch on the ignition.

#### Seat back angle adjustment

- ☞ Tilt the control forwards or rearwards to adjust the angle of the seat back.

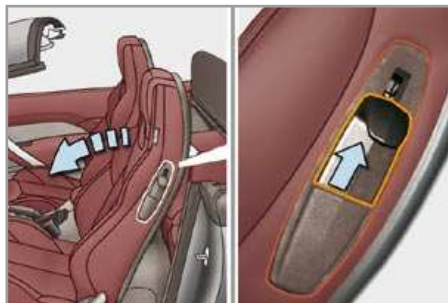


## Additional manual adjustments

### Access to the rear seats

- ☞ Pull the control upwards to fold the seat back, then move the seat forward.

When putting the seat back in place, move it back holding it by the centre of the seat back, the seat returns to its initial position.



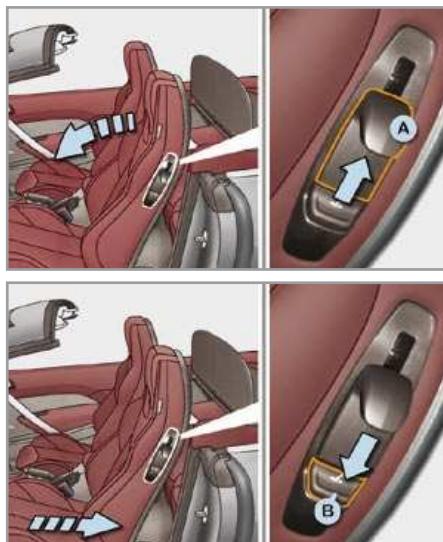
**!** Check that no person or object is preventing the seat slide from returning to its initial position; the return to this position is necessary for longitudinal locking.

## Additional electric adjustments

### Access to the rear seats

- ☞ Pull the control **A** upwards to fold the seat back, the seat moves forward automatically.

When putting the seat back in place, press the control **B** until the seat returns to its initial position.



**i** This function is deactivated while driving.

### Controlling the "AIRWAVE" system

When the engine is running, the "AIRWAVE" system, located in the head restraint of each front seat, can be controlled separately to produce heated blown air directed towards the neck of each occupant.



Use the corresponding adjustment dial, placed on the centre console, to set the temperature and flow of blown air required:

- 0:** Off.
- 1:** Low.
- 2:** Medium.
- 3:** High.



When the control is activated, the blown air arrives progressively to reach a comfortable temperature.



Use the direction dial, placed on each vent, to direct the output of the blown air upwards, to the centre or downwards.



Do not use the "AIRWAVE" system if a child seat is installed on the front passenger seat.

### Heated seats control

With the engine running, the front seats can be heated separately.

Use the adjustment dial, placed on the side of each front seat, to switch on and select the level of heating required:

- 0:** Off.
- 1:** Low.
- 2:** Medium.
- 3:** High.



## STORING DRIVING POSITIONS

System which takes into account the electrical settings of the driver's seat and the door mirrors. It enables you to store two positions using the buttons on the side of the driver's seat.



### Storing a position

#### Using buttons M/1/2

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Adjust your seat and your door mirrors.
- ☞ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.

An audible signal is heard indicating that the settings have been stored.

Storing a new position cancels the previous position.

## Recalling a stored position

### Using button 1 or 2

- ☞ Press and hold button **1** or **2** until the audible signal is heard indicating the end of the adjustment.



When the ignition is off, after a few consecutive position recalls, the function will be deactivated until the engine is started, to prevent discharging of the battery.

## REAR SEATS

Fixed two-seat bench fitted with roll-over bars to guarantee your protection should the vehicle roll over.



The rear head restraints are fixed. They incorporate the roll-over hoops (refer to the section "Safety - § Roll-over hoops").

The rear bench seat may be fitted with a folding comfort armrest in the centre of the seat back.



Do not place any covering on the rear head restraints. Use a special cover recommended by the PEUGEOT network.

## STORING DRIVING POSITIONS

System which takes into account the electrical settings of the driver's seat and the door mirrors. It enables you to store two positions using the buttons on the side of the driver's seat.



### Storing a position

#### Using buttons M/1/2

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Adjust your seat and your door mirrors.
- ☞ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.

An audible signal is heard indicating that the settings have been stored.

Storing a new position cancels the previous position.

## Recalling a stored position

### Using button 1 or 2

- ☞ Press and hold button **1** or **2** until the audible signal is heard indicating the end of the adjustment.



When the ignition is off, after a few consecutive position recalls, the function will be deactivated until the engine is started, to prevent discharging of the battery.

## REAR SEATS

Fixed two-seat bench fitted with roll-over bars to guarantee your protection should the vehicle roll over.



The rear head restraints are fixed. They incorporate the roll-over hoops (refer to the section "Safety - § Roll-over hoops").

The rear bench seat may be fitted with a folding comfort armrest in the centre of the seat back.



Do not place any covering on the rear head restraints. Use a special cover recommended by the PEUGEOT network.

## MIRRORS



## Door mirrors

Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass permitting the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.

## Demisting - Defrosting



If your vehicle is fitted with heated mirrors, the demisting-defrosting operates with the engine running, by switching on the heated rear screen (refer to the "Rear screen demist-defrost" page).

## Adjustment



- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ☞ Move control **B** in all four directions to adjust.
- ☞ Return control **A** to the central position.



The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.

Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

## Folding

- ☞ From outside: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- ☞ From inside: with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.



If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

## Unfolding

- ☞ From outside: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- ☞ From inside: with the ignition on, pull control **A** rearwards.



The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer.



Never fold or unfold the electric folding mirrors manually.

### Automatic tilting in reverse gear

System which provides a view of the ground during parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.



### Programming

- ☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
  - ☞ Select and adjust the left-hand and right-hand mirrors in succession.
- The adjustment is stored immediately.

### Switching on

- ☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.

The glass of the mirror selected tilts downwards, in accordance with its programming.

### Switching off

- ☞ Exit reverse gear and wait ten seconds.
  - or
  - ☞ Return control **A** to the central position.
- The mirror glass returns to its initial position.

The mirror glass also returns to its initial position:

- if the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h),
- if the engine is switched off.

### Rear view mirror

Adjustable mirror providing a central rearward view.

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, useful in poor light.

### Manual day/night model



### Adjustment

- ☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

### Day/night position

- ☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- ☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.



As a safety precaution, the mirrors must be adjusted to reduce the "blind spot".

### Automatic tilting in reverse gear

System which provides a view of the ground during parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.



### Programming

- ☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
  - ☞ Select and adjust the left-hand and right-hand mirrors in succession.
- The adjustment is stored immediately.

### Switching on

- ☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.

The glass of the mirror selected tilts downwards, in accordance with its programming.

### Switching off

- ☞ Exit reverse gear and wait ten seconds.
  - or
  - ☞ Return control **A** to the central position.
- The mirror glass returns to its initial position.

The mirror glass also returns to its initial position:

- if the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h),
- if the engine is switched off.

### Rear view mirror

Adjustable mirror providing a central rearward view.

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, useful in poor light.

### Manual day/night model



### Adjustment

- ☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

### Day/night position

- ☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- ☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.



As a safety precaution, the mirrors must be adjusted to reduce the "blind spot".

## Automatic day/night model



By means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle, this system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses.

It has an anti-dazzle system which darkens the mirror glass: this reduces any driver discomfort caused by the light beams of following vehicles, the sun...



In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

## STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENT



- ☞ **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the steering wheel.
- ☞ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- ☞ Push the control lever to lock the steering wheel.



As a safety precaution, it is imperative that these operations are carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

## Automatic day/night model



By means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle, this system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses.

It has an anti-dazzle system which darkens the mirror glass: this reduces any driver discomfort caused by the light beams of following vehicles, the sun...



In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

## STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENT



- ☞ **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the steering wheel.
- ☞ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- ☞ Push the control lever to lock the steering wheel.



As a safety precaution, it is imperative that these operations are carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

## REMOTE CONTROL KEY

System which permits central unlocking and locking of the vehicle using the lock or from a distance, as well as of the interior storage compartments (glove box and front armrest). It is also used to locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.



### Unlocking the vehicle

#### Unfolding the key

- ☞ First press this button to unfold the key.

#### Complete unlocking using the remote control



- ☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle.

### Complete unlocking using the key

- ☞ Turn the key to the left in the driver's door lock to unlock the vehicle.

Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

The central unlocking also unlocks the glove box and the front armrest compartment.

According to version, the door mirrors unfold at the same time.

### Selective unlocking using the remote control



- ☞ Press the open padlock once to unlock the driver's door only.
- ☞ Press the open padlock again to unlock the passenger's door and the boot.

### Selective unlocking using the key

- ☞ Turn the key to the left in the driver's door lock once to unlock the driver's door only.
- ☞ Turn the key to the left in the driver's door lock again to unlock the passenger's door and the boot.

Each unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the door mirrors unfold at the same time as the first unlocking action.



The complete or selective unlocking parameter is set via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

Complete unlocking is activated by default.

### Unlocking and partial opening of the boot



- ☞ Press this button for more than two seconds to unlock the boot. The boot opens slightly.

This action unlocks the vehicle first.

## Locking the vehicle

### Normal locking using the remote control



- ☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely.

### Normal locking using the key

- ☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely.

Locking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

The central locking also locks the glove box and the front armrest compartment.

According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.



If one of the doors or the boot is still open, the central locking does not take place.

After unlocking the vehicle, if none of the openings - door or boot - are opened within thirty seconds, the vehicle will lock itself again automatically.



The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer.

### Deadlocking using the remote control



- ☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle completely.
- ☞ Press the closed padlock again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

### Deadlocking using the key

- ☞ Turn the key to the right in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely.
- ☞ Turn the key to the right again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking is confirmed by fixed lighting of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.

According to version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.



Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the manual central control button. Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



### Folding the key

- ☞ First press this button to fold the key.

### Locating your vehicle



- ☞ Press the closed padlock to locate your locked vehicle in a car park.

This is indicated by lighting of the courtesy lamps and side spotlamps and flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

## Anti-theft protection

### Electronic engine immobiliser

The key contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.



In the event of a malfunction, you are informed by lighting of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

In this case, your vehicle does not start; contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

## Starting the vehicle

- ☞ Insert the key in the ignition switch. The system recognises the starting code.
- ☞ Turn the key fully towards the dashboard to position **3 (Starting)**.
- ☞ When the engine starts, release the key.



## Switching the vehicle off

- ☞ Immobilise the vehicle.
- ☞ Turn the key fully towards you to position **1 (Stop)**.
- ☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.



### Key left in the "Ignition on" position

If the key has been left in the ignition switch, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.

To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

## Remote control problem

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- ☞ First of all, use the key in the lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
  - ☞ Then, reinitialise the remote control.
- If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

### Reinitialisation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
- ☞ Press the closed padlock immediately for a few seconds.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is fully operational again.

## Changing the battery



Battery ref.: CR1620/3 volts.

This replacement battery is available from PEUGEOT dealers.



If the battery is flat, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.

- ☞ Unclip the casing using a coin at the notch.
- ☞ Slide the flat battery out of its location.
- ☞ Slide the new battery into its location observing the original direction.
- ☞ Clip the casing.
- ☞ Reinitialise the remote control.

**Lost keys**

Visit a PEUGEOT dealer with the vehicle's V5 registration document and your personal identification documents.

The PEUGEOT dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a replacement key.

**Remote control**

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.

The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off, except for reinitialisation.

**Locking the vehicle**

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

**Anti-theft protection**

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

**When purchasing a second-hand vehicle**

Have the key codes memorised by a PEUGEOT dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.



Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment.

Take them to an approved collection point.



### Folding the key

- ☞ First press this button to fold the key.

### Locating your vehicle



- ☞ Press the closed padlock to locate your locked vehicle in a car park.

This is indicated by lighting of the courtesy lamps and side spotlamps and flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

### Anti-theft protection

#### Electronic engine immobiliser

The key contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.



In the event of a malfunction, you are informed by lighting of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

In this case, your vehicle does not start; contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

**Lost keys**

Visit a PEUGEOT dealer with the vehicle's V5 registration document and your personal identification documents.

The PEUGEOT dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a replacement key.

**Remote control**

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.

The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off, except for reinitialisation.

**Locking the vehicle**

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

**Anti-theft protection**

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

**When purchasing a second-hand vehicle**

Have the key codes memorised by a PEUGEOT dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.



Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment.

Take them to an approved collection point.

## Starting the vehicle

- ☞ Insert the key in the ignition switch. The system recognises the starting code.
- ☞ Turn the key fully towards the dashboard to position **3 (Starting)**.
- ☞ When the engine starts, release the key.



## Switching the vehicle off

- ☞ Immobilise the vehicle.
- ☞ Turn the key fully towards you to position **1 (Stop)**.
- ☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.



### Key left in the "Ignition on" position

If the key has been left in the ignition switch, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.

To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

## Remote control problem

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- ☞ First of all, use the key in the lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
  - ☞ Then, reinitialise the remote control.
- If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

### Reinitialisation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
- ☞ Press the closed padlock immediately for a few seconds.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is fully operational again.

## Changing the battery



Battery ref.: CR1620/3 volts.

This replacement battery is available from PEUGEOT dealers.



If the battery is flat, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.

- ☞ Unclip the casing using a coin at the notch.
- ☞ Slide the flat battery out of its location.
- ☞ Slide the new battery into its location observing the original direction.
- ☞ Clip the casing.
- ☞ Reinitialise the remote control.

## ALARM

System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring.

### - Exterior perimeter

The system checks for opening of the vehicle.

The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot, the bonnet...

### - Interior volumetric

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment.

The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

## Self-protection function

The system checks for the putting out of service of its components.

The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the wires of the siren are put out of service or damaged.

## Locking the vehicle with full alarm system



### Activation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Press the locking button on the remote control.

The monitoring system is active: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

After the locking button on the remote control is pressed, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after a delay of 5 seconds and the interior volumetric monitoring after a delay of 45 seconds.



If an opening (door, boot...) is not closed fully, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after a delay of 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric monitoring.

### Deactivation

- ☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control.

The alarm system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off.



For all work on the alarm system, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

### Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle,

### Deactivation of the interior volumetric monitoring

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Within ten seconds, press the button until the indicator lamp is on continuously.
- ☞ Get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Press the locking button on the remote control immediately.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.



To be effective, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

In "cabriolet" configuration, interior volumetric monitoring is deactivated automatically.

### Reactivation of the interior volumetric monitoring

- ☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control to deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring.
- ☞ Press the locking button on the remote control to activate all the monitoring functions.

The indicator lamp in the button again flashes once per second.

### Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for thirty seconds.



The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

### Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.
- ☞ Open the door; the alarm is triggered.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition; the alarm stops. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

### Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key in the driver's door lock.

### Operating fault

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the indicator lamp in the button indicates a fault with the system.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

### Automatic activation\*

2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed, the system is activated automatically.

- ☞ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control.

\* According to country.

## ELECTRIC WINDOW CONTROLS

Fitted with an anti-pinch system on the front windows and a system which controls all four windows on all models.



1. Driver's electric window switch.
2. Passenger's electric window switch.
3. Rear right electric window switch.
4. Rear left electric window switch.
5. Deactivation of the rear electric window switches.

### One-touch electric windows

You have two options:

#### - manual mode

- ☞ Press or pull switch **1** gently. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.

#### - automatic mode

- ☞ Press or pull switch **1** fully. The window opens or closes completely when the switch is released.
- ☞ Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window.



The rear windows do not have an automatic mode or safety anti-pinch function for closing.

Approximately 45 seconds after removing the ignition key or opening a door none of the windows can be opened or closed. The ignition must be switched back on in order to open or close the windows.

### Front windows safety anti-pinch

In automatic mode, when the front window rises and meets an obstacle it stops and partially lowers again.



If the window opens unintentionally when closing is requested (for example, in the presence of ice):

- ☞ press the switch until the window opens completely,
- ☞ then pull the switch immediately until the window closes,
- ☞ continue to pull the switch for approximately three seconds after the window has closed.

**The safety anti-pinch function is not active during these operations.**

### Deactivation of the rear electric window controls

- ☞ For the safety of your children, press switch **5** to deactivate the rear electric window switches regardless of their position.

When the indicator lamp is on, the rear switches are deactivated.

When the indicator lamp is off, the rear switches are activated.

### Switch for all four windows

This switch opens or closes all of the windows at once.



- ☞ Press switch **6** and release it. The windows open completely.
- ☞ Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the windows.

or

- ☞ Pull switch **6** and hold it in this position. The windows close completely.
- ☞ If you release the switch before the windows have closed completely, the windows stop.



This switch is operated under the full responsibility of the driver.

### Reinitialisation

Following reconnection of the battery or in the event of a malfunction you must reinitialise the operation of the electric windows. For each of the controls on the control pad on the driver's side:

- ☞ release the switch and pull it again until it closes completely,
- ☞ hold the switch for approximately three seconds after closing,
- ☞ press the switch to lower the window automatically,
- ☞ when the window has reached the low position, press the switch again for approximately one second.

**The safety anti-pinch function is not active during these operations.**



This procedure reinitialises the operation of the electric windows and the automatic partial opening of the door windows



Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

In the event of contact during operation of the windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the switch concerned.

When the driver operates the passenger electric window switches, he must ensure that no one is preventing correct closing of the windows.

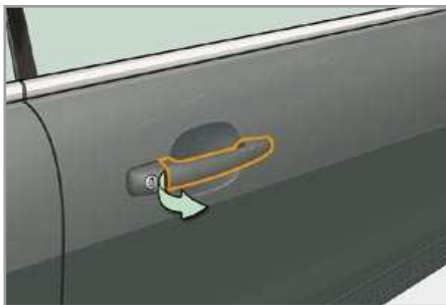
The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Be aware of children when operating the windows.

## DOORS

## Opening

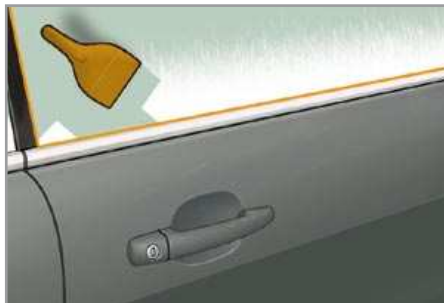
## From outside



- ☞ After unlocking the vehicle completely using the remote control or the key, take hold of the door handle then pull it.

The window lowers automatically by a few millimetres to permit opening of the door.

- i** If you leave the door open for more than one minute, the window rises again.  
Pull the handle again to reactivate the system.



- i** In freezing conditions, the presence of ice may hinder the automatic partial opening of the window; remove the ice which may have formed along the lower seal, located at the base of the window.

- i** When the selective unlocking is activated, the first press of the remote control unlocking button permits unlocking of the driver's door only.

## From inside



- ☞ Pull the door control to open the door; this unlocks this vehicle completely.

The window lowers automatically by a few millimetres to permit opening of the door.

- i** With the selective unlocking activated:
- the driver's door control unlocks the driver's door only,
  - the passenger's door control unlocks the passenger's door and the boot.

- !** The interior door controls do not operate when the vehicle is dead-locked.

## Closing

The window rises automatically after a few seconds and adjusts to provide perfect sealing when closed.



Be aware of the risk of pinching when the window rises automatically on closing the door.

When a door is not closed correctly:



- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed higher than 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen for a few seconds.



When washing your vehicle:

- first lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key,
- avoid spraying the upper part of the windows,
- keep the end of the high pressure nozzle at least 1 metre from the windows and door seals.

## Manual centralised control

System which provides full manual locking or unlocking of the doors and boot from the inside.



## Locking

Press button **A** to lock the vehicle. The red indicator lamp on the button comes on.



If one of the doors or the boot is open, the central locking from the inside does not take place.

## Unlocking

Press button **A** again to unlock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp on the button switches off.



If the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the red indicator lamp flashes and button **A** is inactive.

In this case, use the remote control or the key to unlock the vehicle.



The glove box and the front armrest compartment are not locked so that they remain accessible.

### Anti-intrusion security

System which provides full automatic locking or unlocking of the doors and boot while driving.

You can activate or deactivate this function.

### Locking

When the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the doors and boot lock automatically.



If one of the doors is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.

If the boot is open, the automatic central locking of the doors is active.

### Unlocking

- ☞ Above 6 mph (10 km/h), press this button to unlock the doors and boot temporarily.

### Activation



- ☞ Press this button for more than two seconds.

A confirmation message appears in the multifunction screen.

### Deactivation

- ☞ Press this button again for more than two seconds.

A confirmation message appears in the multifunction screen.

### Emergency locking

To lock or unlock the doors mechanically in the event of a central locking system failure or flat battery.

#### Locking the driver's door

- ☞ Insert the key in the lock, then turn it to the right.

#### Unlocking the driver's door

- ☞ Insert the key in the lock, then turn it to the left.

#### Locking the passenger door



- ☞ Using the key, remove the black cap on the edge of the door.
- ☞ Insert the key in the cavity without forcing, then without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the interior of the door.
- ☞ Remove the key and refit the cap.

#### Unlocking the passenger door

- ☞ Pull the interior door opening control.

## BOOT

### Unlocking and partially opening the boot



- Press this button for more than two seconds to unlock the boot. The boot opens slightly.

This action also unlocks the doors.

### Opening

- After unlocking the boot or the vehicle using the remote control or the key, press the opening control, then raise the boot lid.



If a battery failure occurs, the boot is locked. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

### Boot anti-theft protection

The boot is designed to remain secure, even in the "cabriolet" configuration, if the vehicle is locked.

So, when the vehicle is locked and the roof is open, the boot cannot be unlocked:

- by means of the interior door opening control,
- by pressing the manual centralised control **A**, when the key is not in the ignition switch.



### Closing

- Lower the boot lid using the interior grab handle.
- Press on the top of the boot lid to close it fully.



If the boot lid is not closed correctly:



- when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen for a few seconds,
- when the vehicle is moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen for a few seconds.



When the selective unlocking is activated, the boot can be opened at the second press of the unlocking button on the remote control.

## FUEL TANK

**Capacity of the tank: approximately 60 litres.**

### Low fuel level



When the low fuel level is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen. When the lamp first comes on, there is **approximately 6 litres** of fuel remaining.

Until sufficient fuel has been added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message. When driving, this audible signal and message are repeated with increasing frequency, as the fuel level drops towards **"0"**.

You must refuel to avoid running out of fuel.

If you run out of fuel (Diesel), refer also to the "Checks" section.

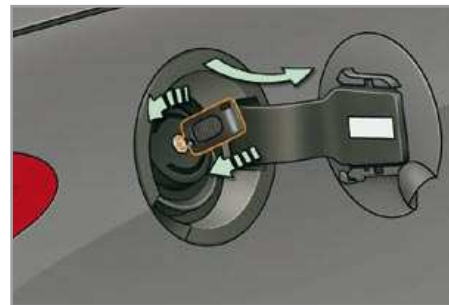
### Refueling

A label affixed to the inside of the filler flap reminds you of the type of fuel to be used according to your engine.

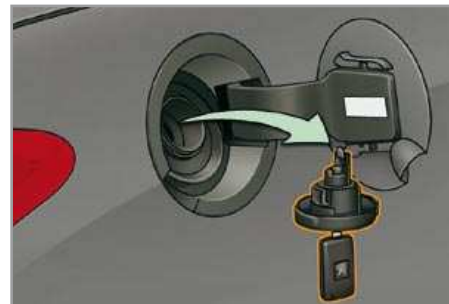
More than 5 litres of fuel must be added in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.

To fill the tank safely:

- ☞ **the engine must be switched off,**
- ☞ open the fuel filler flap,
- ☞ insert the key in the cap, then turn it to the left,



- ☞ remove the cap and secure it on the hook, located on the inside of the flap,
- ☞ fill the tank, but **do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle**; this could cause malfunctions.



When refueling is complete:

- ☞ put the cap back in place,
- ☞ turn the key to the right, then remove it from the cap,
- ☞ close the filler flap.

### Operating fault

A malfunction of the fuel gauge is indicated by the return to zero of the fuel gauge needle.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.



The key cannot be removed from the lock until the cap is put back on the tank.

Opening the cap may trigger an in-rush of air. This vacuum, which is completely normal, is caused by the sealing of the fuel system.

**Quality of the fuel used for petrol engines**

The petrol engines are perfectly compatible with E10 type petrol biofuels (containing 10 % ethanol), conforming to European standards EN 228 and EN 15376.

E85 type fuels (containing up to 85 % ethanol) are reserved exclusively for vehicles marketed for the use of this type of fuel (BioFlex vehicles). The quality of the ethanol must comply with European standard EN 15293.

For Brazil only, special vehicles are marketed to run on fuels containing up to 100 % ethanol (E100 type).

**Quality of the fuel used for Diesel engines**

The Diesel engines are perfectly compatible with biofuels which conform to current and future European standards (Diesel fuel which complies with standard EN 590 mixed with a biofuel which complies with standard EN 14214) available at the pumps (containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

The B30 biofuel can be used in certain Diesel engines; however, this use is subject to strict application of the special servicing conditions. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

## EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROLS

Control stalk for the selection and control of the various front and rear lamps providing the vehicle's lighting.

### Main lighting

The various front and rear lamps of the vehicle are designed to adapt the driver's visibility progressively in relation to the climatic conditions:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- dipped beam headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear.

### Additional lighting

Other lamps are fitted to fulfil the requirements of particular driving conditions:

- a rear foglamp to be seen from a distance,
- front foglamps for even better forward vision,
- directional headlamps for improved visibility when cornering,
- daytime running lamps to be seen during the day.

### Programming

Various automatic lighting control modes are also available depending on options:

- guide-me-home lighting,
- automatic illumination of headlamps,
- directional lighting.

### Model without AUTO lighting



### Model with AUTO lighting



## Manual controls

The lighting commands are issued directly by the driver by means of the ring **A** and the stalk **B**.

- A.** Main lighting mode selection ring: turn it to position the symbol required facing the mark.

**O** Lamps off.

**AUTO** Automatic illumination of headlamps.

 Sidelamps only.

 Dipped headlamps or main beam headlamps.

- B.** Stalk for switching headlamps: pull to switch the lighting between dipped headlamps/main beam headlamps.

In the lamps off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

## Displays

Lighting of the corresponding indicator lamp on the instrument panel confirms the switching on of the lighting selected.

**C. Foglamp selection ring.**

The foglamps operate with the dipped and main beam headlamps.



Front and rear foglamps.

Press, turning ring **C**:

- ☞ forwards once to switch on the front foglamps,
- ☞ forwards again to switch on the rear foglamp,
- ☞ rearwards once to switch off the rear foglamp,
- ☞ rearwards again to switch off the front foglamps.

When the lighting is switched off automatically (with AUTO model) or when the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the front foglamps and the sidelamps will remain on.

- ☞ Turn the ring rearwards to switch off the front foglamps, the sidelamps will then switch off.



In good or rainy weather, both day and night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamp are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or snow.

In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped beam headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.

Do not forget to switch off the front foglamps and the rear foglamp when they are no longer necessary.



In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

**Switching off of the lamps when the ignition is switched off**

On switching off the ignition, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for dipped beam if guide-me-home lighting is activated.

**Switching on the lamps after the ignition is switched off**

To reactivate the lighting control, rotate ring **A** to the "0" position - lamps off, then to the desired position.

On opening the driver's door a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lighting is on.

The lamps, with the exception of the sidelamps, switch off automatically after a maximum duration of thirty minutes to prevent discharging of the battery.

### Daytime running lamps

Daytime lighting, compulsory in certain countries, which comes on automatically when the engine is started making the vehicle more visible to other users.

This function is assured:

- in countries where it is imposed by regulations,  
by illumination of the dipped beam headlamps with the sidelamps and number plate lamps.
- for other countries where it is provided,  
by the use of dedicated lamps.

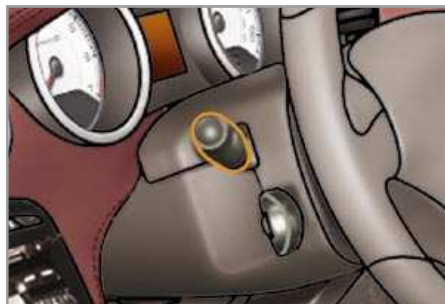


This function can be activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

The instruments and controls (instrument panel, multifunction screen, air conditioning control panel, ...) are not illuminated, except in night mode with manual or automatic illumination of headlamps.

### Manual guide-me-home lighting

Temporarily keeping the dipped beam headlamps on after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.



#### Switching on

- ☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.
- ☞ A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

#### Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

### Automatic illumination of headlamps

The sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, when a low level of external light is detected or in certain cases of activation of the windscreen wipers.

As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.



#### Activation

- ☞ Turn the ring to the **"AUTO"** position. The automatic illumination of headlamps is accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

#### Deactivation

- ☞ Turn the ring to another position. Deactivation is accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

### Associated with the automatic "Guide-me-home" lighting

Association with the automatic lighting provides the "guide-me-home" lighting with the following additional options:

- selection of the lighting duration of 15, 30 or 60 seconds in the vehicle parameters on the multifunction screen configuration menu,
- automatic activation of "guide-me-home" lighting when automatic lighting is in operation.

### Operating fault



In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel and/or a message appears on the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.



In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. Therefore, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Do not cover the sunshine sensor, coupled with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

### EXTERIOR WELCOME LIGHTING

The remote switching on of the lighting and side spotlamps makes your approach to the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated in accordance with the light intensity detected by the brightness sensor.

#### Switching on

- ☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control.

The dipped beam headlamps and the sidelamps come on, as well as the side spotlamps, located in the exterior mirrors; your vehicle is also unlocked.

#### Switching off

The exterior welcome lighting switches off automatically after a set time, when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle.

#### Programming

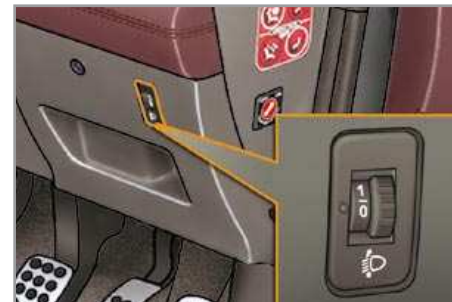


The lighting duration is selected via the multifunction screen configuration menu.



The welcome lighting duration is associated with and identical to that of the automatic guide-me-home lighting.

### MANUAL ADJUSTMENT OF HALOGEN HEADLAMPS



To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of the halogen bulb headlamps must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

- 0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
- 3 people.
- 1. 4 people.
- Intermediate setting.
- 2. 4 people + maximum authorised loads.
- Intermediate setting.
- 3. Driver + maximum authorised loads.



Initial setting is position "0".

### Daytime running lamps

Daytime lighting, compulsory in certain countries, which comes on automatically when the engine is started making the vehicle more visible to other users.

This function is assured:

- in countries where it is imposed by regulations,  
by illumination of the dipped beam headlamps with the sidelamps and number plate lamps.
- for other countries where it is provided,  
by the use of dedicated lamps.



This function can be activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

The instruments and controls (instrument panel, multifunction screen, air conditioning control panel, ...) are not illuminated, except in night mode with manual or automatic illumination of headlamps.

### Manual guide-me-home lighting

Temporarily keeping the dipped beam headlamps on after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.



#### Switching on

- ☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.
- ☞ A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

#### Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

### Automatic illumination of headlamps

The sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, when a low level of external light is detected or in certain cases of activation of the windscreen wipers.

As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.



#### Activation

- ☞ Turn the ring to the **"AUTO"** position. The automatic illumination of headlamps is accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

#### Deactivation

- ☞ Turn the ring to another position. Deactivation is accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

### Associated with the automatic "Guide-me-home" lighting

Association with the automatic lighting provides the "guide-me-home" lighting with the following additional options:

- selection of the lighting duration of 15, 30 or 60 seconds in the vehicle parameters on the multifunction screen configuration menu,
- automatic activation of "guide-me-home" lighting when automatic lighting is in operation.

### Operating fault



In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel and/or a message appears on the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.



In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. Therefore, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Do not cover the sunshine sensor, coupled with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

### EXTERIOR WELCOME LIGHTING

The remote switching on of the lighting and side spotlamps makes your approach to the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated in accordance with the light intensity detected by the brightness sensor.

#### Switching on

- ☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control.

The dipped beam headlamps and the sidelamps come on, as well as the side spotlamps, located in the exterior mirrors; your vehicle is also unlocked.

#### Switching off

The exterior welcome lighting switches off automatically after a set time, when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle.

#### Programming

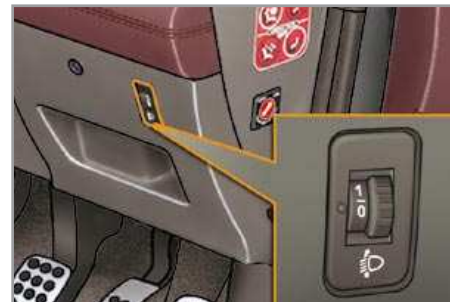


The lighting duration is selected via the multifunction screen configuration menu.



The welcome lighting duration is associated with and identical to that of the automatic guide-me-home lighting.

### MANUAL ADJUSTMENT OF HALOGEN HEADLAMPS



To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of the halogen bulb headlamps must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

- 0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
- 3 people.
- 1. 4 people.
- Intermediate setting.
- 2. 4 people + maximum authorised loads.
- Intermediate setting.
- 3. Driver + maximum authorised loads.



Initial setting is position "0".

### Associated with the automatic "Guide-me-home" lighting

Association with the automatic lighting provides the "guide-me-home" lighting with the following additional options:

- selection of the lighting duration of 15, 30 or 60 seconds in the vehicle parameters on the multifunction screen configuration menu,
- automatic activation of "guide-me-home" lighting when automatic lighting is in operation.

### Operating fault



In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel and/or a message appears on the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.



In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. Therefore, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Do not cover the sunshine sensor, coupled with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

### EXTERIOR WELCOME LIGHTING

The remote switching on of the lighting and side spotlamps makes your approach to the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated in accordance with the light intensity detected by the brightness sensor.

#### Switching on

- ☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control.

The dipped beam headlamps and the sidelamps come on, as well as the side spotlamps, located in the exterior mirrors; your vehicle is also unlocked.

#### Switching off

The exterior welcome lighting switches off automatically after a set time, when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle.

#### Programming

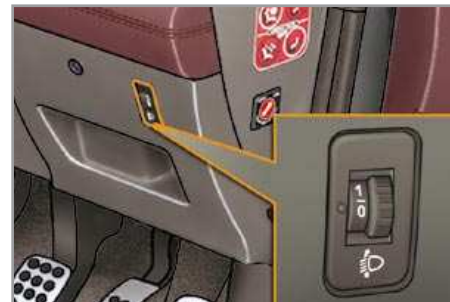


The lighting duration is selected via the multifunction screen configuration menu.



The welcome lighting duration is associated with and identical to that of the automatic guide-me-home lighting.

### MANUAL ADJUSTMENT OF HALOGEN HEADLAMPS



To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of the halogen bulb headlamps must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

- 0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
- 3 people.
- 1. 4 people.
- Intermediate setting.
- 2. 4 people + maximum authorised loads.
- Intermediate setting.
- 3. Driver + maximum authorised loads.



Initial setting is position "0".

### Associated with the automatic "Guide-me-home" lighting

Association with the automatic lighting provides the "guide-me-home" lighting with the following additional options:

- selection of the lighting duration of 15, 30 or 60 seconds in the vehicle parameters on the multifunction screen configuration menu,
- automatic activation of "guide-me-home" lighting when automatic lighting is in operation.

### Operating fault



In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel and/or a message appears on the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal.

Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.



In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. Therefore, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Do not cover the sunshine sensor, coupled with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

### EXTERIOR WELCOME LIGHTING

The remote switching on of the lighting and side spotlamps makes your approach to the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated in accordance with the light intensity detected by the brightness sensor.

#### Switching on

- ☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control.

The dipped beam headlamps and the sidelamps come on, as well as the side spotlamps, located in the exterior mirrors; your vehicle is also unlocked.

#### Switching off

The exterior welcome lighting switches off automatically after a set time, when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle.

#### Programming

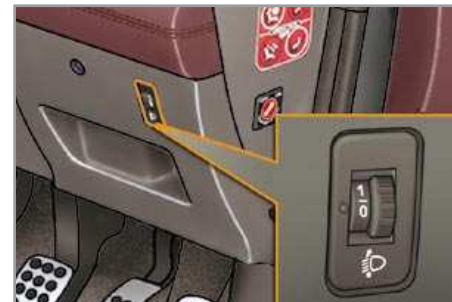


The lighting duration is selected via the multifunction screen configuration menu.



The welcome lighting duration is associated with and identical to that of the automatic guide-me-home lighting.

### MANUAL ADJUSTMENT OF HALOGEN HEADLAMPS



To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of the halogen bulb headlamps must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

- 0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
- 3 people.
- 1. 4 people.
- Intermediate setting.
- 2. 4 people + maximum authorised loads.
- Intermediate setting.
- 3. Driver + maximum authorised loads.



Initial setting is position "0".

## AUTOMATIC ADJUSTMENT OF XENON HEADLAMPS



In order to avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, this system corrects the height of the xenon headlamp beams automatically and when stationary, in relation to the load in the vehicle.



If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp and/or the service warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.



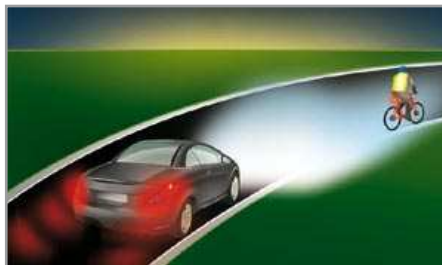
Do not touch the xenon headlamp bulbs. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

## DIRECTIONAL LIGHTING

When the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, this function enables the light beams to provide improved lighting of the side of the road when cornering.

The use of this function, from approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) and associated with the xenon headlamps only, considerably improves the quality of your lighting when cornering.

### with directional lighting



### without directional lighting



## Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the multi-function screen configuration menu.

## Operating fault



If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp flashes on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.



When stationary or moving at very low speed or when reverse gear is engaged, the function is inactive.

The status of the function remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

## AUTOMATIC ADJUSTMENT OF XENON HEADLAMPS



In order to avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, this system corrects the height of the xenon headlamp beams automatically and when stationary, in relation to the load in the vehicle.



If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp and/or the service warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.



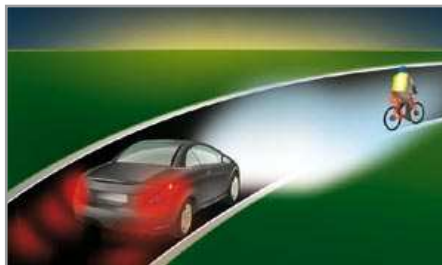
Do not touch the xenon headlamp bulbs. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

## DIRECTIONAL LIGHTING

When the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, this function enables the light beams to provide improved lighting of the side of the road when cornering.

The use of this function, from approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) and associated with the xenon headlamps only, considerably improves the quality of your lighting when cornering.

### with directional lighting



### without directional lighting



## Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the multi-function screen configuration menu.

## Operating fault



If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp flashes on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.

Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.



When stationary or moving at very low speed or when reverse gear is engaged, the function is inactive.

The status of the function remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

## WIPER CONTROLS

Control stalk for the various windscreen wiping modes for the elimination of rain and cleaning.

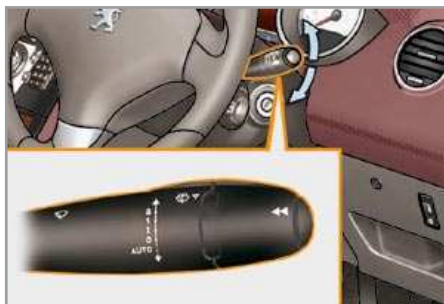
### Programming

An automatic mode is also available, providing automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers.

#### Model with intermittent wiping



#### Model with AUTO wiping



### Manual operation of the windscreen wipers

This control stalk allows selection of the most suitable wiping speed according to the weather conditions:

- 2** fast (heavy rain),
- 1** normal (moderate rain),
- I** intermittent (proportional to the speed of the vehicle),
- 0** park,
- ↓** single wipe (press down and release),
- or

**AUTO ↓** automatic, then single wipe (see following page).

## Windscreen and headlamp wash



☞ Pull the windscreen wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash then the windscreen wipers operate for a fixed period.

The headlamp washers only operate when the **dipped beam headlamps** are on.

## Screenwash/headlamp wash low



In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, when the minimum level of the reservoir is reached, this warning lamp and/or the service warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

Next time you stop, fill the screenwash/headlamp wash reservoir.

The warning lamp is displayed when the ignition is switched on, or every time the stalk is operated, until the reservoir is filled.

## Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.



### Activation

This is controlled manually by the driver by pushing the stalk downwards to the **"AUTO"** position.

It is accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.



### Switching off

This is controlled manually by the driver by moving the stalk upwards then returning it to position **"0"**.

It is accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.



The automatic rain sensitive wipers must be reactivated if the ignition has been off for more than one minute, by pushing the stalk downwards.

### Operating fault

If an automatic wiping malfunction occurs, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.



Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.

Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash.

In winter, to avoid damaging the wiper blades, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

### Special position of the windscreen wipers



This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.

It is used for cleaning or replacement of the blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to detach the blades from the windscreen.

In the moment following switching off of the ignition, any action on the stalk positions the wipers vertically on the windscreen.

To park the wipers after this has been done, switch on the ignition and operate the stalk.



For maintain the effectiveness of the "flat-blade" wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain card-board on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

### COURTESY LAMPS



1. Front courtesy lamp
2. Map reading lamp
3. Rear courtesy lamp

### Front and rear courtesy lamps



In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.



Permanently off.



Permanent lighting.



In permanent lighting mode, different lighting times are available:

- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

### Map reading lamps



With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

## Windscreen and headlamp wash



☞ Pull the windscreen wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash then the windscreen wipers operate for a fixed period.

The headlamp washers only operate when the **dipped beam headlamps** are on.

## Screenwash/headlamp wash low



In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, when the minimum level of the reservoir is reached, this warning lamp and/or the service warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

Next time you stop, fill the screenwash/headlamp wash reservoir.

The warning lamp is displayed when the ignition is switched on, or every time the stalk is operated, until the reservoir is filled.

## Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.



### Activation

This is controlled manually by the driver by pushing the stalk downwards to the **"AUTO"** position.

It is accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.



### Switching off

This is controlled manually by the driver by moving the stalk upwards then returning it to position **"0"**.

It is accompanied by a message on the multifunction screen.



The automatic rain sensitive wipers must be reactivated if the ignition has been off for more than one minute, by pushing the stalk downwards.

### Operating fault

If an automatic wiping malfunction occurs, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.



Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.

Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash.

In winter, to avoid damaging the wiper blades, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

### Special position of the windscreen wipers



This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.

It is used for cleaning or replacement of the blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to detach the blades from the windscreen.

In the moment following switching off of the ignition, any action on the stalk positions the wipers vertically on the windscreen.

To park the wipers after this has been done, switch on the ignition and operate the stalk.



For maintain the effectiveness of the "flat-blade" wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain card-board on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

### COURTESY LAMPS



1. Front courtesy lamp
2. Map reading lamp
3. Rear courtesy lamp

#### Front and rear courtesy lamps



In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.



Permanently off.



Permanent lighting.



In permanent lighting mode, different lighting times are available:

- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

#### Map reading lamps



With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

## INTERIOR MOOD LIGHTING

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.



### Switching on

At night, the footwell lighting and the front courtesy mood lamp come on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.

### Switching off

The interior mood lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.

### Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the multifunction screen configuration menu.

This function is activated by default.

## INTERIOR WELCOME LIGHTING

The remote switching on of the passenger compartment lighting makes your entry into the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated in accordance with the light intensity detected by the brightness sensor.

### Switching on

Press the open padlock on the remote control.

The front door sill lighting, the footwell lighting and the courtesy lamps come on; your vehicle is also unlocked.

### Switching off

The interior welcome lighting switches off automatically after a set time or when one of the doors is opened.

### Programming

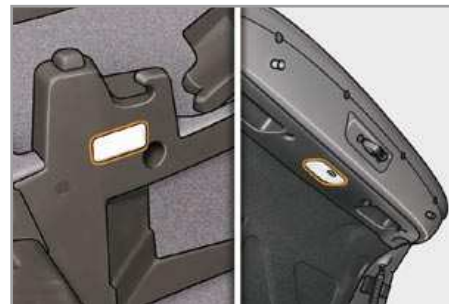


The lighting duration is selected via the multifunction screen configuration menu.



The welcome lighting duration is associated with and identical to that of the automatic guide-me-home lighting.

## BOOT LIGHTING



Your vehicle is fitted with two boot lamps; one in the left-hand boot side trim and a second in the boot lid interior trim.

They come on automatically when the boot is opened and switch off automatically when the boot is closed.

They cannot be deactivated manually.



Different lighting times are available:

- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- when the engine is running, no limit.

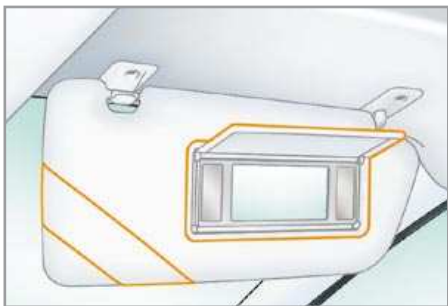
## INTERIOR FITTINGS



1. **Sun visor**  
(see details on following page)
2. **Storage compartment**
3. **Storage compartment**
4. **Lockable, cooled glove box**  
(see details on following page)
5. **Large door trays**
6. **Small door trays**
7. **Illuminated ashtray**  
(see details on following page)
8. **Storage compartment with non-slip carpet**
9. **12 V accessories socket**  
(see details on following page)
10. **Lockable front armrest**  
(see details on following page)
11. **Storage box**  
(see details on following page)

### SUN VISOR

Component which protects against sunlight from the front or the side, also equipped with an illuminated courtesy mirror.



☞ With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; the mirror is lit automatically.

This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

### LOCKABLE, COOLED GLOVE BOX



Its lid has areas for storing a pen, a pair of spectacles, tokens, cards, a can...

It is also locked or unlocked when the vehicle is locked or unlocked using the remote control or the key.

☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle.

It is illuminated when the lid is opened.

The glove box is fitted with an air vent **A**, which can be opened or closed. This distributes the same cooled air as the vents in the passenger compartment.

The glove box also gives access to the dashboard fusebox (refer to the section "Practical information - § Changing a fuse").

### ILLUMINATED ASHTRAY



☞ Pull the drawer for access to the ashtray.

☞ To empty the ashtray, after opening, press the tab and remove the ashtray.

## LOCKABLE FRONT ARMREST

Comfort and storage device for the driver and front passenger.

The height and longitudinal position of the armrest lid can be adjusted for greater comfort.

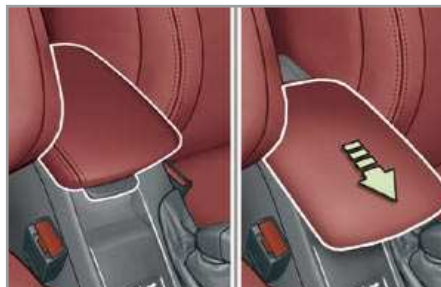
Its compartment is also locked or unlocked when the vehicle is locked or unlocked using the remote control or the key.

### Height adjustment



- ☞ Raise the lid to the required position (low, intermediate or high).
- ☞ If you raise the lid slightly beyond the high position, guide it when lowering it to the low position.

## Longitudinal adjustment



- ☞ Slide the lid fully forwards or rearwards.

## Storage



It can hold up to 6 CDs.

- ☞ Raise the lever 1.
- ☞ Raise the lid fully.

## PEUGEOT CONNECT USB



This connection box, consisting of a USB port, is located in the front armrest. It permits the connection of portable equipment, such as an iPod® digital audio player of generation 5 or later or a USB stick.

It reads the audio file formats (mp3, ogg, wma, wav...) which are transmitted to your audio equipment and played via the vehicle's speakers.

You can manage these files using the steering wheel controls or the audio equipment control panel and display them on the multifunction screen.

When it is in use, the portable equipment charges automatically.

For more information on the use of this equipment, refer to the "Peugeot Connect Media" or "Peugeot Connect Sound" part of the "Audio and Telematics" section.

### STORAGE BOX

Storage area, built into the rear of the front armrest, for the rear passengers.



- ☞ To empty the box, after opening, press the tab and remove it.

### 12 V ACCESSORY SOCKET



- ☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

### MATS

Removable carpet protection component.

#### Fitting

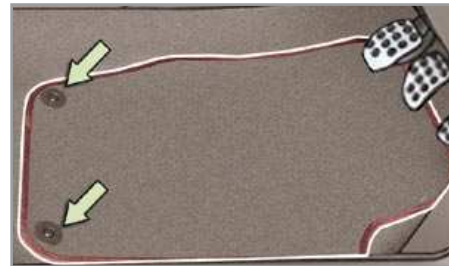
When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side, use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.

The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

#### Removal

To remove the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.



#### Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ refit the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

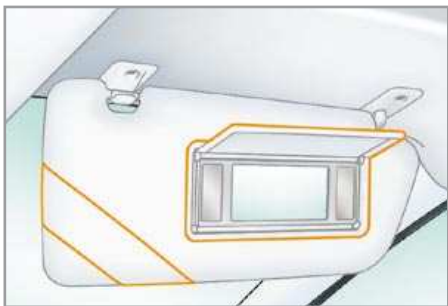


To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; their use is essential,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

### SUN VISOR

Component which protects against sunlight from the front or the side, also equipped with an illuminated courtesy mirror.



☞ With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; the mirror is lit automatically.

This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

### LOCKABLE, COOLED GLOVE BOX



Its lid has areas for storing a pen, a pair of spectacles, tokens, cards, a can...

It is also locked or unlocked when the vehicle is locked or unlocked using the remote control or the key.

☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle.

It is illuminated when the lid is opened.

The glove box is fitted with an air vent **A**, which can be opened or closed. This distributes the same cooled air as the vents in the passenger compartment.

The glove box also gives access to the dashboard fusebox (refer to the section "Practical information - § Changing a fuse").

### ILLUMINATED ASHTRAY



☞ Pull the drawer for access to the ashtray.

☞ To empty the ashtray, after opening, press the tab and remove the ashtray.

## LOCKABLE FRONT ARMREST

Comfort and storage device for the driver and front passenger.

The height and longitudinal position of the armrest lid can be adjusted for greater comfort.

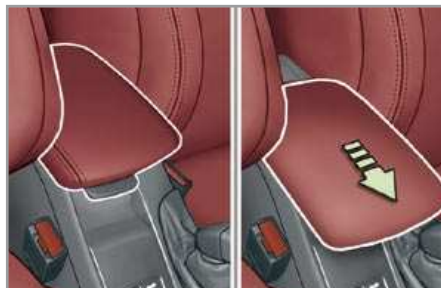
Its compartment is also locked or unlocked when the vehicle is locked or unlocked using the remote control or the key.

### Height adjustment



- ☞ Raise the lid to the required position (low, intermediate or high).
- ☞ If you raise the lid slightly beyond the high position, guide it when lowering it to the low position.

## Longitudinal adjustment



- ☞ Slide the lid fully forwards or rearwards.

## Storage



It can hold up to 6 CDs.

- ☞ Raise the lever 1.
- ☞ Raise the lid fully.

## PEUGEOT CONNECT USB



This connection box, consisting of a USB port, is located in the front armrest. It permits the connection of portable equipment, such as an iPod® digital audio player of generation 5 or later or a USB stick.

It reads the audio file formats (mp3, ogg, wma, wav...) which are transmitted to your audio equipment and played via the vehicle's speakers.

You can manage these files using the steering wheel controls or the audio equipment control panel and display them on the multifunction screen.

When it is in use, the portable equipment charges automatically.

For more information on the use of this equipment, refer to the "Peugeot Connect Media" or "Peugeot Connect Sound" part of the "Audio and Telematics" section.

### STORAGE BOX

Storage area, built into the rear of the front armrest, for the rear passengers.



- ☞ To empty the box, after opening, press the tab and remove it.

### 12 V ACCESSORY SOCKET



- ☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

### MATS

Removable carpet protection component.

#### Fitting

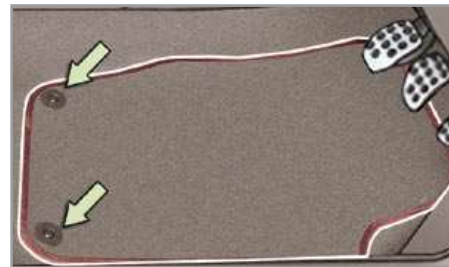
When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side, use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.

The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

#### Removal

To remove the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.



#### Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ refit the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.



To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; their use is essential,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

## BOOT FITTINGS



1. **Stowing rings**
  2. **Luggage retaining net**  
(see details on following page)
  3. **Boot screen**  
(see details on following page)
  4. **Storage net**
  5. **Luggage retaining strap**
  6. **Storage box (version fitted with a temporary tyre repair kit)**  
(see details on following page)
- or**
- Tool box (version fitted with a standard spare wheel)**  
(refer to the section "Practical information - § Changing a wheel")

### Luggage retaining net



Hooked onto the stowing rings, this enables you to secure your luggage.

### Storage box



- ☞ Raise the boot carpet to gain access to the storage box.
- ☞ Hook the boot carpet on the boot seal using its handle.

This has areas for storing the windstop and two warning triangles.

By removing this box you gain access to the temporary tyre repair kit and the vehicle tools.

### Boot screen



In the "cabriolet" configuration, this defines the luggage space in the boot.

- ☞ When the boot screen is unfolded, check that the luggage:
  - never raises it,
  - is never placed on top of it.



The load space cover must always be unfolded before a roof opening manoeuvre is triggered (refer to the "Familiarisation - § Opening" section).

## DIRECTION INDICATORS



- ☞ Left: lower the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.
- ☞ Right: raise the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.



If you forget to cancel the direction indicators for more than twenty seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 40 mph (60 km/h).

## HAZARD WARNING LAMPS

A visual warning by means of the direction indicators to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.



- ☞ Press this button, the direction indicators flash.

They can operate with the ignition off.

## Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically. They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

- ☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

## HORN

Audible warning to alert other road users to an imminent danger.



- ☞ Press one of the spokes of the steering wheel.



Use the horn moderately and only in the following cases:

- immediate danger,
- overtaking a cyclist or pedestrian
- when approaching an area where there is no visibility.

## EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL



This system allows you to make an emergency or assistance call to the emergency services or to the dedicated PEUGEOT service.

For more information on the use of this function, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

## TYRE UNDER-INFLATION DETECTION

System which automatically and continuously checks the pressure of the tyres while driving.



Sensors fitted in each valve trigger a warning in the event of problem (speed above 12 mph (20 km/h)).

**i** The tyre under-inflation detection system is an aid to driving which does not replace the need for the driver to be vigilant or to drive responsibly.

### Under-inflated tyre



This warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel and/or a message appears on the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal, to locate the wheel concerned.

☞ Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible. This check must be carried out when the tyres are cold.

### Puncture



The **STOP** warning lamp comes on and/or this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen locating the wheel concerned.

- ☞ Stop as soon as it is safe to do so, avoiding any sudden movement of the steering wheel and the brakes.
- ☞ Repair or change the damaged wheel (punctured or very deflated tyre), and have the tyre pressure checked as soon as possible.

### Sensor(s) not detected or faulty



This warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel and/or a message appears on the multifunction screen, accompanied by an audible signal, to locate the wheel or wheels which are not detected or to indicate a fault in the system.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer to replace the faulty sensor(s).



This message is also displayed when one of the wheels is away from the vehicle (being repaired) or when one or more wheels without a sensor are fitted.

If your vehicle is equipped with a spare wheel, this is not fitted with a sensor.



All repairs and changing of tyres on a wheel fitted with this system must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer.

If, when changing a tyre, you install a wheel which is not detected by your vehicle (example: fitting of snow tyres), you must have the system reinitialised by a PEUGEOT dealer.



This system does not avoid the need to have the tyre pressures checked regularly (refer to the "Identification markings" section) to ensure that the optimum dynamic performance of the vehicle is maintained and prevent premature wear of the tyres, particularly in arduous driving conditions (heavy load, high speed).

The tyre pressures must be checked cold, at least once a month. Remember to check the pressure of the spare wheel.

The tyre under-inflation detection system may experience temporary interference due to electro-magnetic emissions on a frequency close to that used by the system.

## BRAKING ASSISTANCE SYSTEMS

Group of supplementary systems which help you to obtain optimum braking in complete safety in emergency situations:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS),
- electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA).

### Anti-lock braking system and electronic brake force distribution

Linked systems which improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking, in particular on poor or slippery surfaces.

#### Activation

The anti-lock braking system comes into operation automatically when there is a risk of wheel lock.

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibration of the brake pedal.



When braking in an emergency, press very firmly without releasing the pressure.

#### Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, it indicates a malfunction of the anti-lock braking system which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.



If this warning lamp comes on, together with the **STOP** and **ABS** warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, it indicates a malfunction of the electronic brake force distribution which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

**You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.**

In either case, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.



When replacing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that they conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

#### Emergency braking assistance

System which, in an emergency, enables you to obtain the optimum braking pressure more quickly, thus reducing the stopping distance.

#### Activation

It is triggered by the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed.

The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.



When braking in an emergency, press firmly without releasing the pressure.

#### Deactivation

If your vehicle is fitted with the 1.6 litre THP 200 hp petrol engine, you can deactivate this function; refer to the "Trajectory control systems - § Deactivation" section.

## TRAJECTORY CONTROL SYSTEMS

### Anti-skid regulation (ASR) and electronic stability programme (ESP)

The anti-skid regulation (also known as Traction Control) optimises traction to prevent skidding of the wheels, by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine.

The electronic stability programme acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to keep the vehicle on the trajectory required by the driver, within the limits of the laws of physics.

#### Activation

These systems are activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.

They come into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.



This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp on the instrument panel.

#### Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, ...), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR and ESP systems, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.



☞ Press the **"ESP OFF"** button, located on the dashboard.



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the indicator lamp in the button come on, this indicates that the ASR and ESP systems are deactivated.

On vehicles fitted with the 1.6 litre THP 200 hp engine, this action also deactivates emergency brake assistance and the automatic operation of hazard warning lamps.

#### Reactivation

These systems are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h) (except in the case of the 1.6 litre THP 200 hp petrol engine).

☞ Press the **"ESP OFF"** button again to reactivate them manually.

On vehicles fitted with the 1.6 THP 200 hp engine, this action also reactivates emergency brake assistance and the automatic operation of hazard warning lamps.

#### Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, this indicates a malfunction of these systems.

Have the systems checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.



The ESP/ASR systems offer exceptional safety in normal driving, but this should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

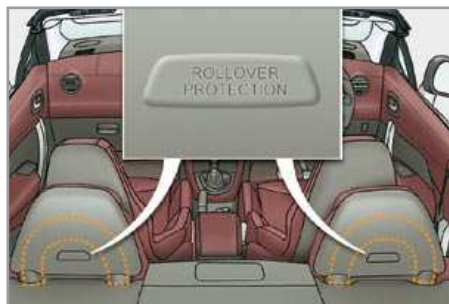
The correct functioning of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding the wheels (tyres and rims), the braking components, the electronic components and the repair and assembly procedures used by PEUGEOT dealers.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

## ROLL-OVER BARS

System which protects all of the occupants restrained by their seat belt should the vehicle roll over.

The roll-over bars are incorporated in the back of the rear bench seat. Their presence is indicated by the words "Rollover Protection".



### Activation

They are triggered simultaneously should the vehicle roll over.

### Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, contact a PEUGEOT dealer to have the system checked.



In order to guarantee the correct operation and the deployment of the roll-over bars if roll-over is detected, the following conditions must be complied with:

- no accessory which is not recommended by PEUGEOT should be in contact with or fixed to the roll-over bars,
- no object should block or stop the movement of the roll-over bars,
- the area above the roll-over bars should be clear of any objects.

## SEAT BELTS

### Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system.

This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front impact. Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.

The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.

The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, so improving their protection.

### Fastening



- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

### Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

### Seat belt not fastened/unfastened warning lamp



When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on, either on the instrument panel or on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamp display, if the driver and/or the front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal of increasing volume. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the driver and/or the front passenger fastens their seat belt.

### Seat belt not fastened/unfastened warning lamps display



1. Front and/or rear seat belts not fastened/unfastened warning lamp.
2. Front left seat belt warning lamp.
3. Front right seat belt warning lamp.
4. Rear right seat belt warning lamp.
5. Rear left seat belt warning lamp.

The corresponding warning lamp **2** or **3** comes on in red on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display if the seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.

### Rear seat belts

The rear seats are each fitted with a three-point inertia reel seat belt with force limiter.

### Fastening

- ✎ Remove the strap from the guide **A** before use.
- ✎ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ✎ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.



In the "cabriolet" configuration, if the rear seats are not occupied, slide the straps in the guides **A** to prevent fluttering of the rear seat belts (leather seats only).

### Unfastening

- ✎ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ✎ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

### Seat belt unfastened warning lamp



This warning lamp comes on, either on the instrument panel or on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, when one or more rear passengers unfasten their seat belt.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal of increasing volume. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the one or more rear passengers fasten their seat belt.

### Seat belt unfastened warning lamps display



When the ignition is switched on, with the engine running or the vehicle moving at a speed below approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamps **4** and **5** come on in red for approximately 30 seconds, if the seat belt is not fastened.

When the vehicle is moving at a speed of more than approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamp **4** or **5** comes on in red, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, if a rear passenger has unfastened their seat belt.



The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all restrained securely before setting off.

Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not invert the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.

The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stored automatically when not in use.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling firmly on the strap and releasing it so that it re-winds slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, all repairs and checks must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer who guarantees that the work is carried out correctly.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a PEUGEOT dealer and particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by PEUGEOT dealers.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

### Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

### In the event of an impact

**Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impacts**, the pre-tensioning device may be triggered before and independently of the airbags. Triggering of the pre-tensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a PEUGEOT dealer.

## AIRBAGS

The airbags have been designed to maximise the safety of the occupants in the event of violent collisions. They supplement the action of the force-limiting seat belts.

In this case, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts suffered in the impact detection zones:

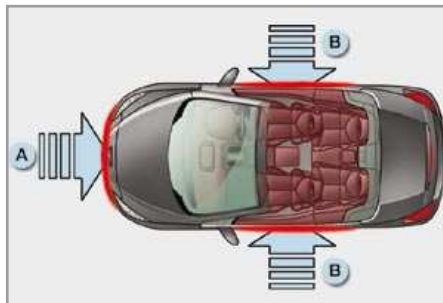
- in the event of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantaneously and protect the occupants of the vehicle; immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder the visibility of the occupants or their possible exit from the vehicle,
- in the event of a minor impact or rear impact and in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags will not be deployed; the seat belt alone is sufficient to provide maximum protection in these situations.



### The airbags do not operate when the ignition is off.

This equipment only operates once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not operate.

## Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone.

B. Side impact zone.



The deployment of one or more airbags is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

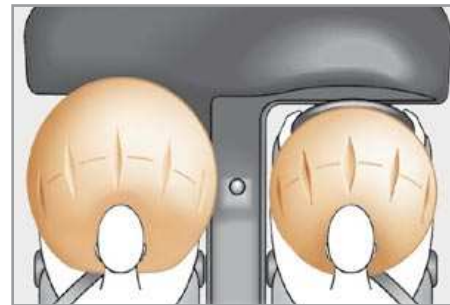
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience some irritation.

The noise of the detonation may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

## Front airbags

System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.



## Deployment

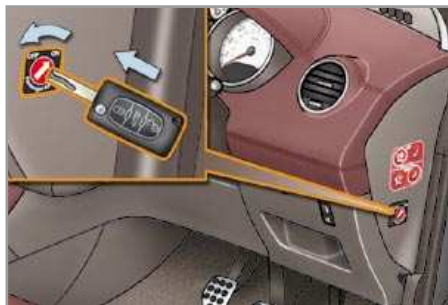
The airbags are deployed simultaneously, unless the passenger's front airbag is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone A, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side to cushion their forward movement.

## Deactivation

Only the passenger's front airbag can be deactivated:

- ✦ **with the ignition off**, insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch,
- ✦ turn it to the **"OFF"** position,
- ✦ then, remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.



✦ According to version, this warning lamp comes on either in the instrument panel or in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display when the ignition is on and until the airbag is re-activated.



To assure the safety of your child, the passenger's front airbag must be deactivated when you install a "rear facing" child seat on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

## Reactivation

When you remove the child seat, turn the switch to the **"ON"** position to re-activate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.



With the ignition on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display for approximately one minute, if the passenger's front airbag is activated.

## Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible warning and a message in the multifunction screen, contact a PEUGEOT dealer to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.



If this warning lamp flashes, contact a PEUGEOT dealer. The passenger's front airbag may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.



If at least one of the two airbag warning lamps come on continuously, do not install a child seat on the front passenger seat.

Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

### Lateral airbags

System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the pelvis, chest and head.

The lateral airbags are fitted on the door side:

- in the front seat back frame (chest-pelvis airbag),
- in the front head restraint (head airbag).



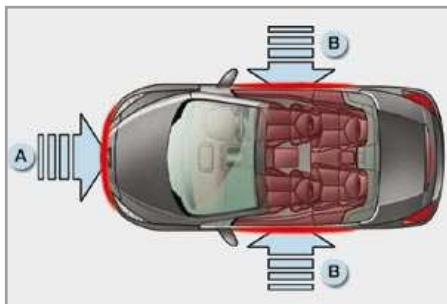
### Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The lateral airbags inflate between the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim panel.



### Impact detection zones



**A.** Front impact zone.

**B.** Side impact zone.



In the event of a light impact or bump to the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.

In the event of a rear or front collision, the airbags are not deployed.

### Operating fault



If this warning lamp in the instrument panel comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, contact a PEUGEOT dealer to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.



**For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the following safety rules:**

Sit in a normal upright position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...). This could hamper the operation of the airbags or injure the occupants.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag system is strictly forbidden unless it is carried out by qualified personnel of the PEUGEOT dealer network.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

### **Front airbags**

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

If possible, do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

### **Lateral airbags**

Fit only approved covers on the seats. These will not hinder inflation of the lateral airbags. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs. This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not fix or attach anything to the front head restraints. This could cause injury to the head if the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

## GENERAL POINTS RELATING TO CHILD SEATS

Although one of PEUGEOT's main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings\*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats**,
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearwards-facing" position both in the front and in the rear.**



**PEUGEOT recommends** that children should travel in the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **"rearwards-facing"** up to the age of 2,
- **"forwards-facing"** over the age of 2.

## CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT

### "Rearwards-facing"

When a "rearwards-facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, it is essential that the passenger airbag is deactivated. Otherwise, **the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate.**



### "Forwards-facing"

When a "forwards-facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the intermediate longitudinal position with the seat back upright and leave the passenger airbag activated.



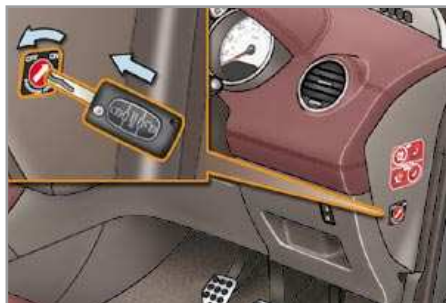
Intermediate longitudinal position



\* The rules for carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the current legislation in your country.



Passenger airbag OFF



## CHILD SEATS RECOMMENDED BY PEUGEOT

PEUGEOT offers a complete range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**:

**Group 0+:** from birth to 13 kg

**Groups 1, 2 and 3:** from 9 to 36 kg



**L1**

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"

Installed in the rearwards-facing position.



**L2**

"KIDDY Life"

The use of the restraining cushion is compulsory for carrying young children (from 9 to 18 kg).

**Groups 2 and 3:** from 15 to 36 kg



**L3**

"RECARO Start"



**L4**

"KLIPPAN Optima"

From the age of 6 years (approximately 22 kg), the booster is used on its own.



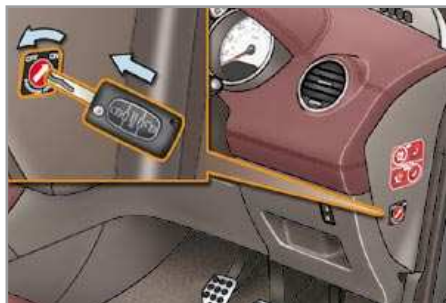
**L5**

"RÖMER KIDFIX"

Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt.



Passenger airbag OFF



## CHILD SEATS RECOMMENDED BY PEUGEOT

PEUGEOT offers a complete range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**:

**Group 0+:** from birth to 13 kg

**Groups 1, 2 and 3:** from 9 to 36 kg



**L1**

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"

Installed in the rearwards-facing position.



**L2**

"KIDDY Life"

The use of the restraining cushion is compulsory for carrying young children (from 9 to 18 kg).

**Groups 2 and 3:** from 15 to 36 kg



**L3**

"RECARO Start"



**L4**

"KLIPPAN Optima"

From the age of 6 years (approximately 22 kg), the booster is used on its own.



**L5**

"RÖMER KIDFIX"

Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt.

### LOCATIONS FOR CHILD SEATS SECURED USING THE SEAT BELT

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for the installation of child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (a) in relation to the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

| Seat                     |                                                                                   | Weight of the child/indicative age                              |                                                          |                                                           |                                                            |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
|                          |                                                                                   | Less than 13 kg<br>(groups 0 (b) and 0+)<br>Up to 1 year approx | From 9 to 18 kg<br>(group 1)<br>From 1 to 3 years approx | From 15 to 25 kg<br>(group 2)<br>From 3 to 6 years approx | From 22 to 36 kg<br>(group 3)<br>From 6 to 10 years approx |
| Front passenger seat (c) |  | U(R)                                                            | U(R)                                                     | U(R)                                                      | U(R)                                                       |
| Outer rear seats (d)     |  | U                                                               | U                                                        | U                                                         | U                                                          |

(a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Infant car seats and "car" cots cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.

(c) Consult the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.

(d) To install a child seat, move the front seat forward, then put the seat back in the upright position to leave enough space for the child seat and the child's legs. The front seat can be moved further forward than the intermediate longitudinal position.

**U**: seat suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved "rear facing" and/or "forward facing".

**U(R)**: identical to **U**, with the vehicle's seat adjusted to its highest position.



## ADVICE ON CHILD SEATS

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the vehicle's seat.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses **keeping the slack** in relation to the child's body **to a minimum**, even for short journeys.

For optimum installation of the "forward facing" child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is in contact with the back of the vehicle's seat and that the head restraint does not cause any discomfort.

Children under the age of 10 must not travel in the "forward facing" position on the front passenger seat, unless the rear seats are already occupied by other children, cannot be used or are absent.

Deactivate the passenger's airbag when a "rear facing" child seat is installed on the front seat. Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate.

Do not use the passenger's "AIRWAVE" system if a child seat is installed on the front seat.

### Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.

PEUGEOT recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.

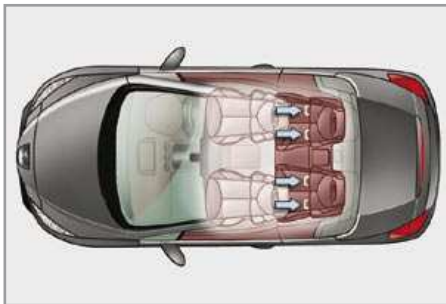
As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- one or more children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

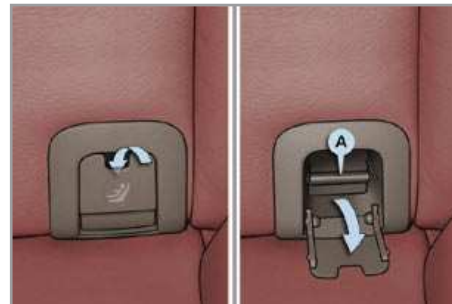
## "ISOFIX" MOUNTINGS

Your vehicle is approved with regulation ISOFIX mountings.

The diagram below indicates the seats which are fitted with these mountings:



These are two rings **A** for each seat, located between the seat back and seat cushion of the vehicle's seat, indicated by a label.



These rings are located behind covers. For access to them:

- ☞ insert the ignition key in the cut-out in the cover,
- ☞ pull it forwards to unclip it and then fold it down.

**The ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are secured easily on these rings **A**.

This ISOFIX mounting system provides reliable, safe and fast fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.



The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of a collision.



For installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the table showing the locations for fitting ISOFIX child seats.

**ISOFIX CHILD SEAT RECOMMENDED BY PEUGEOT AND APPROVED FOR YOUR VEHICLE****RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX**  
(size category **B1**)**Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg**

Installed in the forwards facing position only.

Secured without the upper strap.

Three child seat body angles: sitting, reclining and lying positions.

Adjust the vehicle's front seat so that the child's feet do not touch the seat back.



This child seat can also be used on seats which are not fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it is essential that it is secured to the vehicle's seat by means of the seat belt.

**Follow the instructions for fitting the child seat indicated in the seat manufacturer's installation guide.**

## LOCATIONS FOR FITTING ISOFIX CHILD SEATS

In accordance with European Regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings.

In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

|                                                                                                | Weight of the child/indicative age                        |   |                                                                                       |   |   |                                                        |   |                  |   |    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---|--------------------------------------------------------|---|------------------|---|----|
|                                                                                                | Less than 10 kg<br>(group 0)<br>Up to approx.<br>6 months |   | Less than 10 kg<br>(group 0)<br>Less than 13 kg<br>(group 0+)<br>Up to approx. 1 year |   |   | From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)<br>From approx. 1 to 3 years |   |                  |   |    |
| Type of ISOFIX child seat                                                                      | Infant car seat*                                          |   | "rear facing"                                                                         |   |   | "rear facing"                                          |   | "forward facing" |   |    |
| ISOFIX size category                                                                           | F                                                         | G | C                                                                                     | D | E | C                                                      | D | A                | B | B1 |
| ISOFIX universal and semi-universal child seats which can be installed on the outer rear seats | X                                                         |   | IL-SU                                                                                 |   |   | IL-SU                                                  |   | IL-SU            |   |    |

**IL-SU:** seat suitable for the installation of an Isofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat either:

- "rear facing" fitted with a stay,
- "forward facing" fitted with a stay.

**X:** seat which is not suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX seat of the size category indicated.

\* Infant car seats and "car" cots cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.

## PARKING BRAKE



### Applying

- ☞ Pull the parking brake lever fully up to immobilise your vehicle.

### Releasing

- ☞ Pull the parking brake lever gently, press the release button then lower the lever fully.



When the vehicle is being driven, if this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen, this indicates that the parking brake is still on or has not been properly released.



When parking on a slope, direct your wheels against the pavement, apply the parking brake and engage a gear.

## 6-SPEED MANUAL GEARBOX

### Engaging reverse gear

- ☞ Raise the ring under the knob and push the gear lever to the left then forwards.



Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.



As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:

- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

## GEAR SHIFT INDICATOR\*

System which reduces fuel consumption by advising the driver to change up on vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox.

### Operation

The system intervenes only when driving economically.

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one or more gears. You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.

The gear recommended should not be considered compulsory. In fact, the configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the advice given by the system.

This function cannot be deactivated.

Example:

- You are in third gear.
- You press the accelerator pedal moderately.
- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear, if appropriate.



The information appears in the form of an arrow on the instrument panel screen.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, this arrow may be accompanied by the recommended gear.



In the case of driving which makes particular demands on the performance of the engine (firm pressure on the accelerator pedal, for example, when overtaking...), the system will not recommend a gear change.

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear,
- engaging a lower gear.

\* According to engine.

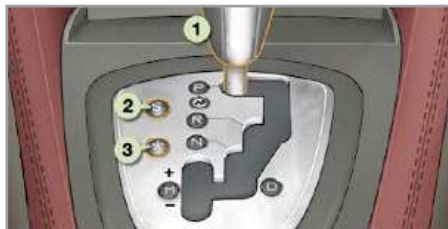
## "PORSCHE TIPTRONIC SYSTEM" AUTOMATIC GEARBOX

Four or six speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing.

Four driving modes are provided:

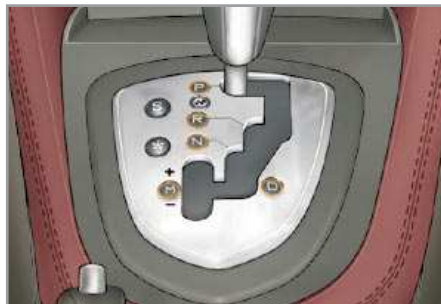
- **automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox,
- **sport** programme for a more dynamic style of driving,
- **snow** programme to improve driving when traction is poor,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

### Gear selection gate



1. Gear lever.
2. Button "S" (**sport**).
3. Button "❄" (**snow**).

### Gear lever



#### P. Park.

- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on or off.
- Starting the engine.

#### R. Reverse.

- Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.

#### N. Neutral.

- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on.
- Starting the engine.

#### D. Automatic operation.

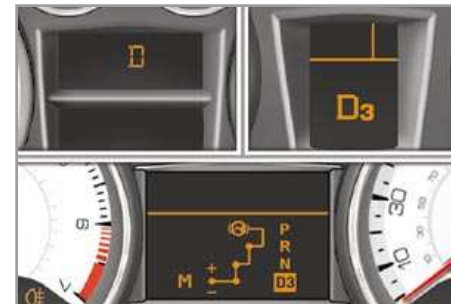
**M.+/-** Manual operation with sequential changing of the four or six gears.

☞ Push forwards to change up through the gears.

or

☞ Pull rearwards to change down through the gears.

### Displays in the instrument panel



When you move the lever in the gate to select a position, the corresponding indicator lamp is displayed in the instrument panel.

#### P. Park

#### R. Reverse

#### N. Neutral

#### D. Drive (Automatic driving)

#### S. **Sport** programme

#### ❄. **Snow** programme

#### 1 to 4. Gear engaged during

#### 1 to 6. manual operation

#### - . Invalid value during manual operation

### Foot on brake



☞ When this warning lamp flashes, press the brake pedal to allow disengagement of the gear lever from the **P** position.

## Moving off

- ☞ Apply the parking brake.
- ☞ Select position **P** or **N**.
- ☞ Start the engine.

If this procedure is not followed, a loud audible signal is heard, accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen.

- ☞ With the engine running, press the brake pedal.
- ☞ Release the parking brake.
- ☞ Select position **R**, **D** or **M**.
- ☞ Gradually release the brake pedal.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

**i** If position **N** is engaged inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle then engage position **D** to accelerate.

**!** When the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.

When the engine is running, never leave children in the vehicle without supervision.

When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

## Automatic operation

- ☞ Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the four or six gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.

For maximum acceleration without touching the lever, press the accelerator pedal down fully (kick down). The gearbox changes down automatically or maintains the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.

On braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide efficient engine braking.

If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not change to a higher gear for safety reasons.



Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.

Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

## Sport and snow programmes

These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very specific conditions of use.

### Sport programme "S"

- ☞ Press button **"S"**, after starting the engine.

The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.



**S** appears in the instrument panel.

### Snow programme "❄"

- ☞ Press button **"❄"**, after starting the engine.

The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads.

This programme improves starting and drive when traction is poor.



❄ appears in the instrument panel.

## Return to automatic operation

- ☞ At any time, press the button selected again to quit the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

## Manual operation

- ☞ Select position **M** for **sequential** changing of the four or six gears.
- ☞ Push the lever towards the **+** sign to change up a gear.
- ☞ Pull the lever towards the **-** sign to change down a gear.

It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit; otherwise, the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.



**D** disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession on the instrument panel.

If the engine speed is too low or too high, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the actual gear engaged is displayed.

It is possible to change from position **D** (automatic) to position **M** (manual) at any time.

When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **M1** automatically.

The sport and snow programmes do not operate in manual mode.

## Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (selector between two positions).

## Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.

In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.



If the lever is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, an audible signal is heard and a message appears.

- ☞ Return the lever to position **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

## Operating fault



When the ignition is on, the lighting of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, indicates a gearbox malfunction.

In this case, the gearbox switches to emergency mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.

Do not exceed a speed of 60mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer. This warning lamp may also come on if a door is opened.



There is a risk of damage to the gearbox:

- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time,
- if you force the lever from position **P** to another position when the battery is flat.



To limit fuel consumption when stationary for long periods with the engine running (traffic jam...), place the gear lever in position **N** and apply the parking brake.

## SPEED LIMITER

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

When the programmed speed limit is reached, pressing the accelerator pedal no longer has any effect.

The speed limiter is **switched on** manually: it requires a programmed speed of at least 20 mph (30 km/h).

The speed limiter is **switched off** by manual operation of the control.

The programmed speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator firmly.

To return to the programmed speed, simply slow down to a speed below the programmed speed.

The programmed speed remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

**i** The speed limiter cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to respect speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

## Steering mounted controls



The controls of this system are grouped together on stalk **A**.

1. Speed limiter mode selection dial
2. Value decrease button
3. Value increase button
4. Speed limiter on/off button

## Displays on the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together on the instrument panel screen.

5. Speed limiter on/off indication
6. Speed limiter mode selection indication
7. Programmed speed value



### Programming

- ☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"LIMIT"** position: the speed limiter mode is selected but is not switched on (OFF).

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

- ☞ Set the speed value by pressing button **2** or **3** (e.g.: 55 mph (90 km/h)).

You can then change the programmed speed using buttons **2** and **3**:

- by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
- by + or - 5 mph (km/h) = long press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.

- ☞ Switch the speed limiter on by pressing button **4**.
- ☞ Switch the speed limiter off by pressing button **4**: the display confirms that it has been switched off (OFF).
- ☞ Switch the speed limiter back on by pressing button **4** again.

### Exceeding the programmed speed

Pressing the accelerator pedal to exceed the programmed speed will not have any effect unless you press the pedal **firmly** past the **point of resistance**.

The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the programmed speed, which is still displayed, flashes.

Returning to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the programmed speed.

### Return to normal driving

- ☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"0"** position: the speed limiter mode is deselected. The display returns to the distance recorder.



### Operating fault

In the event of a speed limiter malfunction, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.

Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.



On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

## CRUISE CONTROL

System which automatically maintains the speed of the vehicle at the value programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is **switched on** manually: it requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h) and the engaging:

- of fourth gear on the manual gearbox,
- of second gear on the automatic gearbox, in sequential driving mode,
- of position **D** on the automatic gearbox.

The cruise control is **switched off** manually or by pressing the brake or clutch pedal or on triggering of the ESP system for safety reasons.

It is possible to exceed the programmed speed temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal.

To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.

Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed value.

## Steering mounted controls



The controls of this system are grouped together on lever **A**.

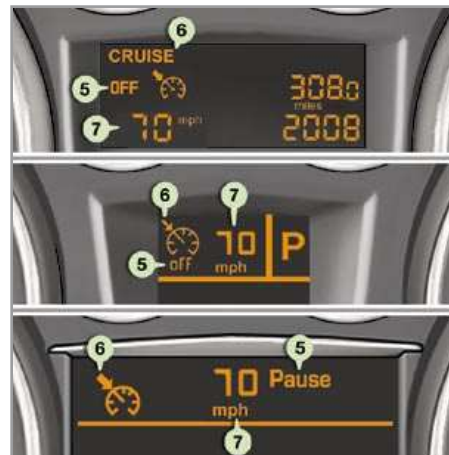
1. Cruise control mode selection dial
2. Speed programming/value decrease button
3. Speed programming/value increase button
4. Cruise control off/resume button



The cruise control cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to respect speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance and responsibility on the part of the driver.

You are advised to keep your feet near the pedals at all times.

## Displays on the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together on the instrument panel screen.

5. Cruise control off/resume indication
6. Cruise control mode selection indication
7. Programmed speed value



### Programming

- ☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"CRUISE"** position: the cruise control mode is selected but is not switched on (OFF).
- ☞ Set the programmed speed by accelerating to the required speed, then press button **2** or **3** (e.g.: 70 mph (110 km/h)).

You can then change the programmed speed using buttons **2** and **3**:

- by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
- by + or - 5 mph (km/h) = long press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.

- ☞ Switch off the cruise control by pressing button **4**: the display confirms that it has been switched off (OFF).

- ☞ Switch the cruise control back on by pressing button **4** again.

### Exceeding the programmed speed

Intentional or unintentional exceeding of the programmed speed results in flashing of this speed on the display.

Return to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the speed.

### Return to normal driving

- ☞ Turn dial **1** to the **"0"** position: the cruise control mode is deselected. The display returns to the distance recorder.



### Operating fault

In the event of a cruise control malfunction, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.



When the cruise control is switched on, be careful if you maintain the pressure on one of the programmed speed changing buttons: this may result in a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads or in heavy traffic.

On a steep descent, the cruise control will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

## PARKING SENSORS

This system indicates the proximity of an obstacle (person, vehicle, tree, gate, etc.) which comes within the field of detection of sensors located in the bumper.

Certain types of obstacle (stake, road-works cone, etc.) detected initially will no longer be detected at the end of the manoeuvre due to the presence of blind spots.



This function cannot, in any circumstances, take the place of the vigilance and responsibility of the driver.

## Rear parking sensors



The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear. This is accompanied by an audible signal.

The system is switched off when you exit reverse gear.

## Audible assistance

The proximity information is given by a discontinuous audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.

The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.

When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

## Visual assistance



This supplements the audible signal by displaying segments in the multifunction screen which move progressively nearer to the vehicle. When the obstacle is near, the "Danger" symbol is also displayed in the screen.

## Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h).

The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) indicates whether the obstacle is in front or behind.

The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if no further obstacles are detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

## Deactivation/Activation of the front and rear parking sensors



The function is deactivated by pressing this button. The indicator lamp on the button comes on.

Pressing this button again reactivates the function. The indicator lamp on the button switches off.

## Deactivation/Activation of the rear parking sensors



The function is deactivated or activated via the vehicle configuration menu.

The status of the function is stored when the ignition is switched off.

For more information on access to the parking sensors menu, refer to the section covering the configuration of vehicle systems.

## Operating fault



If an operating fault occurs, when reverse gear is engaged this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel and/or a message appears on the screen, accompanied by an audible signal (short bleep).

Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.



The function will be deactivated automatically if a trailer is being towed or a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towbar or bicycle carrier recommended by PEUGEOT).



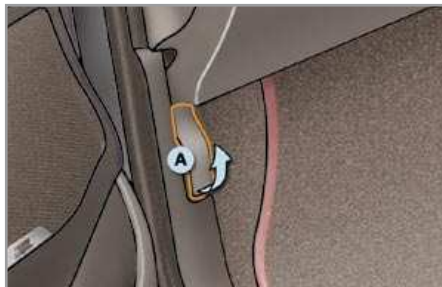
In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long bleep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

When the vehicle is moving at a speed below 6 mph (10 km/h), certain sound sources (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, etc.) may trigger the audible signals of the parking sensor system.

## BONNET

### Opening

- ☞ Open the front left door.
- ☞ Pull the interior bonnet release lever **A**, located at the bottom of the door frame.



- ☞ Push the exterior safety catch **B** to the left and raise the bonnet.



- ☞ Unclip the stay **C** from its housing.
- ☞ Fix the stay in the notch to hold the bonnet open.



The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet while the front left door is closed.



When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns).

### Closing

- ☞ Take the stay out of the support notch.
- ☞ Clip the stay in its housing.
- ☞ Lower the bonnet and release it at the end of its travel.
- ☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it is secured correctly.

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL (DIESEL)

If your vehicle is fitted with an HDI engine, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel; refer to the engine compartment view on the "Diesel engine" page.



If the engine does not start first time, don't keep trying.  
Operate the priming pump again, then the starter motor.

### 1.6 litre Turbo HDI engine

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of diesel.
- ☞ Open the bonnet.
- ☞ Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until it hardens (it may be hard at the first press).
- ☞ Operate the starter until the engine starts.
- ☞ Close the bonnet.

### 2 litre Turbo HDI engine

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Open the bonnet.
- ☞ Unclip the style cover for access to the priming pump.
- ☞ Slacken the bleed screw.
- ☞ Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until fuel appears in the transparent pipe with the green connector.
- ☞ Retighten the bleed screw.
- ☞ Operate the starter until the engine starts.
- ☞ Put the style cover back in position and clip it in place.
- ☞ Close the bonnet.

**PETROL ENGINES**

The various caps and covers allow access for checking the levels of the various fluids and for replacing certain components.

1. Power steering reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
3. Coolant reservoir.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery/Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.





## DIESEL ENGINES

The various caps and covers allow access for checking the levels of the various fluids, for replacing certain components and for priming the fuel system.

1. Power steering reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
3. Coolant reservoir.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery/Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.
10. Priming pump\*.
11. Bleed screw\*.

\* According to engine.

## CHECKING LEVELS

Check all of these levels regularly and top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.

If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.



When working under the bonnet, take care, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns).

### Oil level



The reading will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 15 minutes.

The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator on the instrument panel, or using the dipstick.

### Engine oil change

Refer to the Warranty and Maintenance Record for details of the interval for this operation.

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, the use of additives in the engine oil is prohibited.

### Oil specification

The oil must correspond to your engine and conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

### Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

### Changing the fluid

Refer to the Warranty and Maintenance Record for details of the interval for this operation.

### Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations and fulfil the DOT4 standards.

### Power steering fluid level



The power steering fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. Unscrew the cap, with the engine cold, to check the level.

### Coolant level



The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan. This can operate with the ignition off.

**On vehicles which are fitted with a particle emission filter, the fan may operate after the vehicle has been switched off, even if the engine is cold.**

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid any risk of scalding, unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop. When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the level.

### Changing the coolant

The coolant does not have to be changed.

### Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

### Screenwash and headlamp wash fluid



In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, the minimum level of this fluid is indicated by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

Top up the level when you stop the vehicle.

### Fluid specification

For optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, this fluid must not be topped up with or replaced with plain water.

### Diesel additive level (Diesel engine with particle emission filter)

A low additive level is indicated by lighting of the service warning lamp, accompanied by an audible warning and a message on the multifunction screen.

#### Topping up

This additive must be topped up by a PEUGEOT dealer without delay.

### Used products



Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.  
Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.



Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.  
Take used oil to a PEUGEOT dealer (France) or an authorised waste disposal site.

### CHECKS

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the Warranty and Maintenance Record and according to your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

#### Battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

However, check that the terminals are clean and correctly tightened, particularly in summer and winter.

When carrying out work on the battery, refer to the "Practical information" section for details of the precautions to be taken before disconnecting the battery and following its reconnection.

#### Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the Warranty and Maintenance Record for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary** (refer to the "Engines" paragraph).

A clogged cabin filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

### Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Refer to the Warranty and Maintenance Record for details of the replacement interval for this component.

### Particle emission filter (Diesel)



Display of this warning lamp, together with the service warning lamp, indicates the start of saturation of the particle filter or low level in the Diesel additive reservoir.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the service warning lamp goes off.



If the service warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low additive level. Have the additive reservoir topped up and the particle emission filter serviced by a PEUGEOT dealer.



Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

### Diesel additive level (Diesel engine with particle emission filter)

A low additive level is indicated by lighting of the service warning lamp, accompanied by an audible warning and a message on the multifunction screen.

#### Topping up

This additive must be topped up by a PEUGEOT dealer without delay.

### Used products



Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.  
Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.



Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.  
Take used oil to a PEUGEOT dealer (France) or an authorised waste disposal site.

### CHECKS

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the Warranty and Maintenance Record and according to your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.

#### Battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

However, check that the terminals are clean and correctly tightened, particularly in summer and winter.

When carrying out work on the battery, refer to the "Practical information" section for details of the precautions to be taken before disconnecting the battery and following its reconnection.

#### Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the Warranty and Maintenance Record for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary** (refer to the "Engines" paragraph).

A clogged cabin filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

### Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Refer to the Warranty and Maintenance Record for details of the replacement interval for this component.

### Particle emission filter (Diesel)



Display of this warning lamp, together with the service warning lamp, indicates the start of saturation of the particle filter or low level in the Diesel additive reservoir.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the service warning lamp goes off.



If the service warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low additive level. Have the additive reservoir topped up and the particle emission filter serviced by a PEUGEOT dealer.



Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

### Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the Warranty and Maintenance Record for the details of the level checking interval for this component.

### Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Refer to the Warranty and Maintenance Record for details of the level checking interval for this component.

### Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

### Brake disc wear



For information relating to checking the brake disc wear, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

### Parking brake



If a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.

This system must be checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.



Only use products recommended by PEUGEOT or products of equivalent quality and specifications.

In order to optimise the operation of units as important as the braking system, PEUGEOT selects and offers very specific products.

To avoid damaging the electrical units, the use of a high pressure washer in the engine compartment is strictly **prohibited**.

## TEMPORARY PUNCTURE REPAIR KIT

Complete system consisting of a compressor and a sealant cartridge which permits **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

### Access to the kit



The kit is stowed in the boot under the floor. It is installed in the tool box, located under the storage box.

### Description of the kit



- A. "Sealant" or "Air" position selector.
- B. On "I"/off "O" switch.
- C. Deflation button.
- D. Pressure gauge (in bar or p.s.i.).
- E. Compartment housing:
  - a cable with adaptor for 12 V socket,
  - various inflation adaptors for accessories, such as balls, bicycle tyres...



- F. Sealant cartridge.
- G. White pipe with cap for repair.
- H. Black pipe for inflation.
- I. Speed limit sticker.



The speed limit sticker **I** must be affixed to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

## Repair procedure

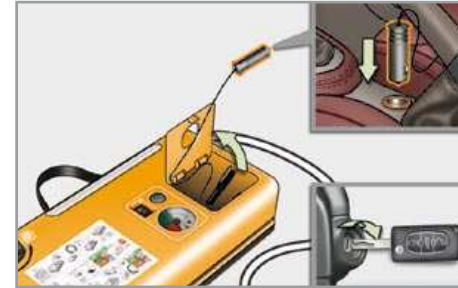
### 1. Sealing



- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Turn the selector **A** to the "SEALANT" position.
- ☞ Check that the switch **B** is in position "O".



- ☞ Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- ☞ Unscrew the cap from the white pipe.
- ☞ Connect the white pipe to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.



- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.



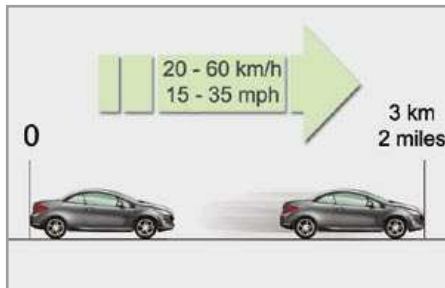
Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.



Take care, this product is harmful (e.g. ethylene-glycol, colophony...) if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.  
Keep it out of reach of children.



- ☞ Switch on the compressor by moving the switch **B** to position **"I"** until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars. The sealant is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing).



- ☞ Remove the kit and screw the cap back on the white pipe. Take care to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid. Keep the kit to hand.
- ☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph [20 and 60 km/h]), to plug the puncture.
- ☞ Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.



If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer for assistance.



#### Tyre under-inflation detection

If the vehicle is fitted with tyre under-inflation detection, the under-inflation warning lamp will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a PEUGEOT dealer.

## 2. Inflation



- ☞ Turn the selector **A** to the "AIR" position.
- ☞ Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- ☞ Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel.



- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.



- ☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position "I"; to deflate: switch **B** in position "O" and press button **C**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the left hand door aperture).

A loss of pressure indicates that the puncture has not been fully plugged; contact a PEUGEOT dealer for assistance.

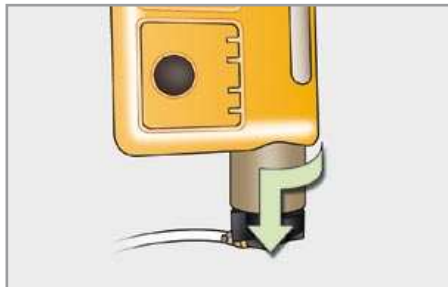
- ☞ Remove and stow the kit.
- ☞ Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h] max) limiting the distance travelled to approximately 120 miles (200 km).



- ☞ Visit a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

You must inform the technician that you have used this kit. After inspection, the technician will inform you whether the tyre can be repaired or must be replaced.

### Removing the cartridge



- ☞ Stow the black pipe.
- ☞ Detach the angled base from the white pipe.
- ☞ Support the compressor vertically.
- ☞ Unscrew the cartridge from the bottom.

**!** Beware of discharges of fluid. The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the cartridge. The sealant cartridge is designed for single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced. After use, do not discard the cartridge into the environment, take it to an authorised waste disposal site or a PEUGEOT dealer. Do not forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from PEUGEOT dealers.

### Checking tyre pressures/ inflating accessories

You can also use the compressor, without injecting any product, to:

- check or adjust the pressure of your tyres,
- inflate other accessories.



- ☞ Turn the selector **A** to the "Air" position.
- ☞ Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- ☞ Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel or accessory. If necessary, fit one of the adaptors supplied with the kit first.

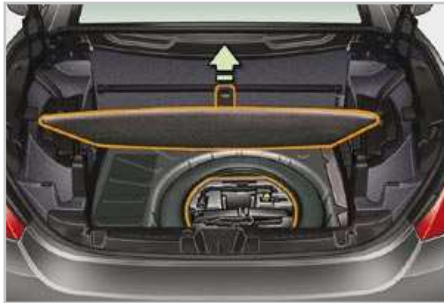


- ☞ Connect the compressor's electrical connector to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Start the vehicle and let the engine run.
- ☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position "I"; to deflate: switch **B** in position "O" and press button **C**), according to the vehicle's tyre pressure label or the accessory's pressure label.
- ☞ Remove the kit then stow it.

## CHANGING A WHEEL

Procedure for changing a faulty wheel for the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

### Access to the tools



The tools are installed in the boot under the floor.

For access to them:

- ☞ change to the "coupé" configuration,
- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ raise the floor,
- ☞ secure it by hooking its handle on the boot seal,
- ☞ unclip and remove the box containing the tools.

### List of tools



All of these tools are specific to your vehicle. Do not use them for other purposes.

1. Wheelbrace.  
Permits removal of the wheel trim and removal of the wheel fixing bolts.
2. Jack with integral handle.  
Permits raising of the vehicle.
3. "Bolt cover" tool.  
Permits removal of the bolt protectors (covers) on alloy wheels.
4. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box).  
Permits adaptation of the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.



### Wheel with trim

**When removing the wheel**, detach the trim first using the wheelbrace 1 pulling at the valve passage hole.

**When refitting the wheel**, refit the trim starting by placing its notch facing the valve and press around its edge with the palm of your hand.

### Access to the spare wheel



The spare wheel is installed in the boot under the floor.

According to country, the spare wheel may be steel or alloy.

For access to it, refer to the paragraph "Access to the tools" on the previous page.



#### Fitting the steel spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, it is normal to notice, when tightening the bolts on fitting, that the washers do not come into contact with the steel spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

### Taking out the wheel

- ✎ Unscrew the yellow central bolt.
- ✎ Raise the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ✎ Take the wheel out of the boot.

### Putting the wheel back in place

- ✎ Put the wheel back in its housing.
- ✎ Unscrew the yellow central bolt by a few turns then put it in place in the centre of the wheel.
- ✎ Tighten fully until the central bolt clicks to retain the wheel correctly.

- ✎ Put the box back in place in the centre of the wheel and clip it.



#### Tyre under-inflation detection

The spare wheel is not fitted with a sensor. The punctured wheel must be repaired by a PEUGEOT dealer.



## Removing the wheel



### Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery ground.

Apply the parking brake, switch off the ignition and engage first gear\* to lock the wheels.

If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.

It is imperative that you ensure that the occupants get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.

Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

### List of operations

- ✎ Remove the chromed bolt cover from each of the bolts using the tool 3.
- ✎ Fit the security socket 4 on the wheelbrace 1 to slacken the security bolt.
- ✎ Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace 1 only.
- ✎ Place the jack 2 in contact with one of the two front A or rear B locations provided on the underframe, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.
- ✎ Extend the jack 2 until its base plate is in contact with the ground. Ensure that the centreline of the jack base plate is directly below the location A or B used.
- ✎ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.
- ✎ Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- ✎ Remove the wheel.

\* position P for the automatic gearbox.



## Fitting the wheel



## List of operations

- ☞ Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- ☞ Screw in the bolts by hand.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace 1 fitted with the security socket 4.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace 1 only.



- ☞ Lower the vehicle fully.
- ☞ Fold the jack 2 and detach it.



## After changing a wheel

To store the punctured wheel in the boot correctly, first remove the central cover.

Have the tightening of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked by a PEUGEOT dealer without delay.

Have the punctured wheel repaired without delay and replace it on the vehicle as soon as possible.

When the spare wheel is different from the other wheels, we strongly recommend that your drive with particular care.

- ☞ Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace 1 fitted with the security socket 4.
- ☞ Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace 1 only.
- ☞ Refit the chromed bolt covers on each of the bolts.
- ☞ Store the tools in the box.



## CHANGING A BULB



The headlamps are fitted with polycarbonate glass with a protective coating:

- ✎ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- ✎ use a sponge and soapy water,
- ✎ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not direct at the lamps or their outlines for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.



- ✎ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use lint-free cloths.

Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for a few minutes (risk of serious burns).

It is imperative to use only anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs in order not to damage the headlamp.

Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

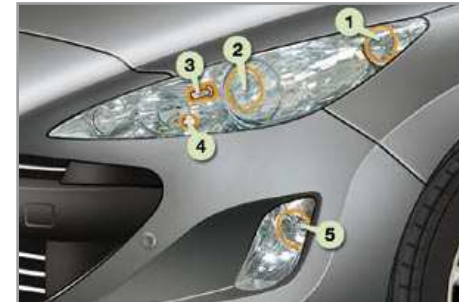
### Front lamps

#### Model with halogen headlamps



1. Direction indicators (PY 21W amber).
2. Dipped beam headlamps (H7 - 55W).
3. Main beam headlamps (H1 - 55W).
4. Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (P 21/5W).
5. Foglamps (H8 - 35W).

#### Model with xenon and directional headlamps

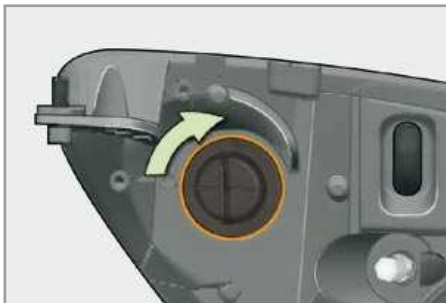


1. Direction indicators (PY 21W SV silver).
2. Directional dipped/main beam headlamps (D1S-35W).
3. Additional main beam headlamps (H1-55W).
4. Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (P 21/5W).
5. Foglamps (H8-35W).



#### Risk of electrocution

Xenon bulbs (D1S-35W) must be replaced by a PEUGEOT dealer.

**Changing direction indicator bulbs**

- ✦ Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and extract it.
  - ✦ Pull the bulb and change it.
- To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.



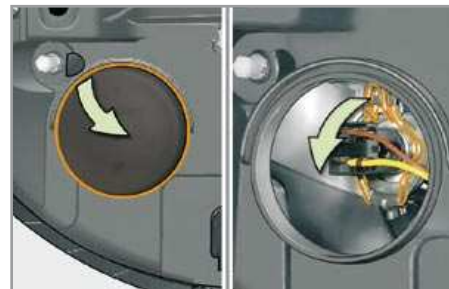
Amber or silver coloured bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced with bulbs of identical specifications and colour.



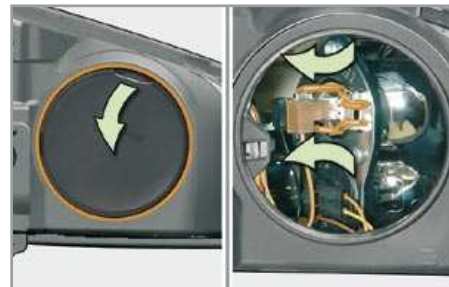
When refitting, close the protective cover carefully to assure the sealing of the headlamp.

**Changing dipped beam headlamp bulbs**

- ✦ Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
  - ✦ Disconnect the bulb connector.
  - ✦ Spread the springs to release the bulb.
  - ✦ Extract the bulb and change it.
- To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

**Changing main beam headlamp bulbs**

- ✦ Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
  - ✦ Disconnect the bulb connector.
  - ✦ Compress the springs to release the bulb.
  - ✦ Remove the bulb and change it.
- To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

**Changing daytime running lamp/sidelamp bulbs**

- ✦ Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
  - ✦ Disconnect the bulb connector.
  - ✦ Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and extract it.
  - ✦ Pull the bulb and change it.
- To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.



### Changing integrated direction indicator side repeaters



- ✎ Insert a screwdriver towards the centre of the repeater between the repeater and the base of the mirror.
- ✎ Tilt the screwdriver to extract the repeater and remove it.
- ✎ Disconnect the repeater connector.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer to obtain replacement repeaters.

### Changing the side spotlamps



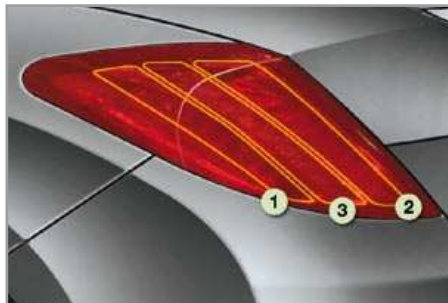
For the replacement of this type of diode bulb, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

### Changing foglamp bulbs



To replace these bulbs consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

## Rear lamps



1. Brake lamps (LEDs).
2. Sidelamps (LEDs).
3. Direction indicators (LEDs).
4. Foglamp (P 21 W).
5. Reversing lamp (P 21 W).

## Changing brake lamps, sidelamps and direction indicators

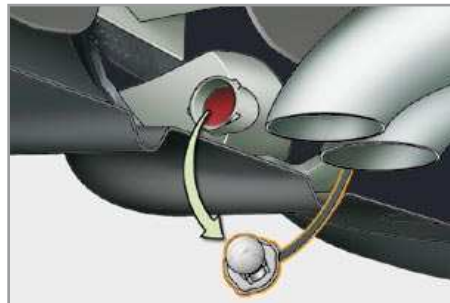
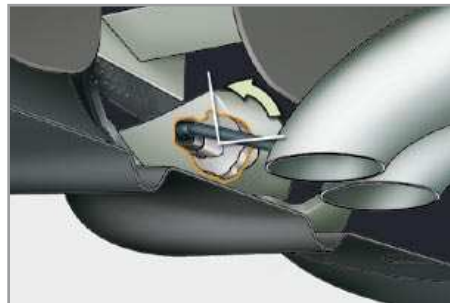
For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

## Changing the foglamp and reversing lamp bulbs

These two bulbs are changed from outside the rear bumper:

- ☞ turn the bulb holder one quarter of a turn and remove it,
- ☞ turn the bulb one quarter of a turn and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.



On the left-hand side, take care not to touch the silencer; risk of burns, if you change the bulb after switching off the ignition.

### Changing the third brake lamp (LEDs)



For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

### Changing the number plate lamp bulbs (W 5 W)



- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver in one of the exterior holes of the lens.
- ☞ Push it towards the outside to unclip it.
- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Pull the bulb and change it.



### High pressure washing

When using this type of washing on stubborn dirt, do not persist on the headlamps, the lamps and their surrounds to avoid damaging their protective coating and seals.

## CHANGING A FUSE



### Access to the tools

The extraction tweezer and the spare fuses are fixed on the back of the dashboard fusebox cover.

To gain access to them:

- ☞ open the glove box lid,
- ☞ push the opening guide to the left past the first notch,
- ☞ open the glove box lid fully,
- ☞ turn the screw a quarter of a turn to the left,
- ☞ unclip the fusebox cover by pulling the top right,
- ☞ disengage the fusebox cover completely and turn it over,
- ☞ extract the support, on the back of which are fixed the tweezer and the replacement fuses.



### Changing a fuse

Before changing a fuse, it is necessary that:

- ☞ the cause of the failure be identified and rectified,
- ☞ all electrical consumers be switched off,
- ☞ the vehicle be immobilised and the ignition switched off,
- ☞ the failed fuse be identified using the allocation tables and drawings in the following pages.

To change a fuse, you must:

- ☞ use the special tweezer to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament,
- ☞ always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); a different rating may cause malfunctions (risk of fire).

If the fault occurs again soon after replacing the fuse, have the electrical system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.



Good



Failed



Tweezer



### Installing electrical accessories

Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.

Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.



PEUGEOT will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by PEUGEOT and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

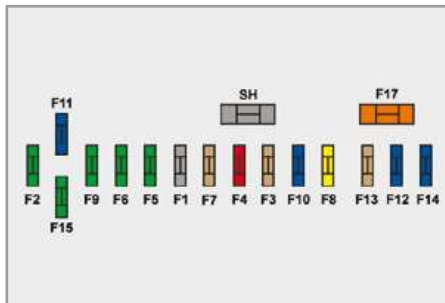
## Dashboard fuses

The fusebox is located in the lower left of the dashboard.



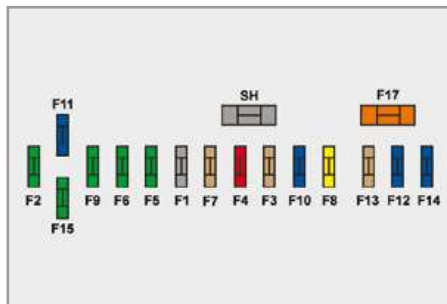
## Access to the fuses

☞ refer to the paragraph "Access to the tools".

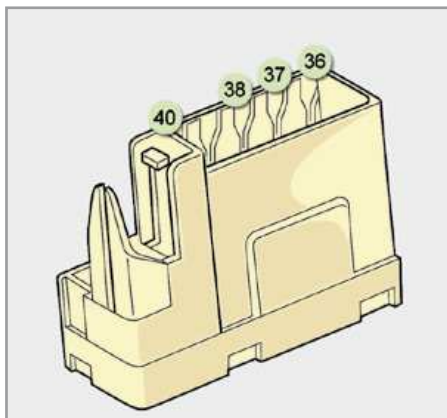


## Fuse tables

| Fuse N° | Rating | Functions                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| F1      | -      | Not used.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| F2      | 30 A   | Locking and deadlocking earth.                                                                                                                                                     |
| F3      | 5 A    | Airbags and pretensioners control unit.                                                                                                                                            |
| F4      | 10 A   | Clutch pedal and dual-function brake switches, electrochromatic rear view mirror, air conditioning, steering wheel angle sensor, automatic gearbox, switching and protection unit. |
| F5      | 30 A   | Front one-touch electric windows, folding mirrors supply.                                                                                                                          |
| F6      | 30 A   | Rear one-touch electric windows, exterior door opening controls.                                                                                                                   |
| F7      | 5 A    | Front and rear courtesy lamps, map reading lamps, sun visor lighting, glove box lighting.                                                                                          |
| F8      | 20 A   | Audio equipment, audio/telephone, multifunction screen, tyre under-inflation detection, interior storage compartments.                                                             |
| F9      | 30 A   | Front 12 V socket, cigar lighter.                                                                                                                                                  |
| F10     | 15 A   | Steering mounted controls, alarm siren, alarm control unit.                                                                                                                        |
| F11     | 15 A   | Low current ignition switch.                                                                                                                                                       |



| Fuse N° | Rating | Functions                                                                                                                                           |
|---------|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| F12     | 15 A   | Instrument panel, seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, air conditioning, driver's seat memory unit, retractable roof unit. |
| F13     | 5 A    | Engine fusebox, airbags.                                                                                                                            |
| F14     | 15 A   | Multifunction screen, amplifier, hands-free kit, rain/sunshine sensor, parking sensors control unit, passenger's seat memory unit.                  |
| F15     | 30 A   | Locking and deadlocking.                                                                                                                            |
| F17     | 40 A   | Rear screen and door mirrors demist/defrost.                                                                                                        |
| SH      | -      | PARC shunt.                                                                                                                                         |



| Fuse N° | Rating | Functions                                      |
|---------|--------|------------------------------------------------|
| G36     | 30 A   | Driver and passenger heated seats.             |
| G37     | 5 A    | Trailer fusebox.                               |
| G38     | 30 A   | Driver's seat memory unit.                     |
| G39     | -      | Not used.                                      |
| G40     | 30 A   | Hi-Fi amplifier, passenger's seat memory unit. |

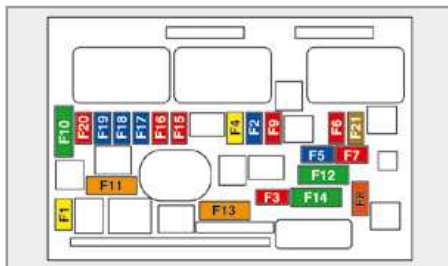
## Engine compartment fuses

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery (left-hand side).



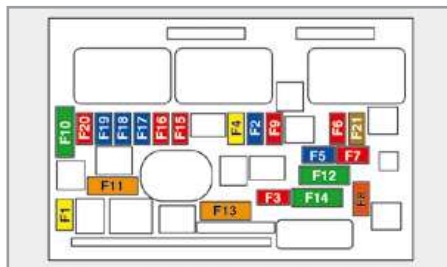
### Access to the fuses

- ✎ Unclip the cover.
- ✎ Change the fuse (see corresponding paragraph).
- ✎ When you have finished, close the cover carefully to assure the sealing of the fusebox.



## Fuse table

| Fuse N° | Rating | Functions                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| F1      | 20 A   | Engine control unit supply, injection pump and EGR electrovalves (2 litre HDI), injectors (2 litre HDI).                                                                      |
| F2      | 15 A   | Horn.                                                                                                                                                                         |
| F3      | 10 A   | Front wash-wipe.                                                                                                                                                              |
| F4      | 20 A   | Headlamp wash.                                                                                                                                                                |
| F5      | 15 A   | Purge canister, turbine discharge and Turbo pressure regulation electrovalves (1.6 l THP 16V), oil vapour heater (1.6 litre THP 16V), Diesel heater (1.6 litre HDI).          |
| F6      | 10 A   | Vehicle speed sensor, ABS/ESP control unit.                                                                                                                                   |
| F7      | 10 A   | Power steering control unit, automatic gearbox, engine coolant level detector.                                                                                                |
| F8      | 25 A   | Starter motor control.                                                                                                                                                        |
| F9      | 10 A   | Diagnostic socket, directional headlamps, air flow sensor (Diesel), particle emission filter pump (Diesel), door mirror controls.                                             |
| F10     | 30 A   | Engine control unit actuators (petrol: ignition coils, electrovalves, oxygen sensors, injectors, heaters, fuel pump, electronic thermostat) (Diesel: electrovalves, heaters). |
| F11     | 40 A   | Air conditioning blower.                                                                                                                                                      |



| Fuse N°    | Rating      | Functions                                                                                                                                            |
|------------|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>F12</b> | <b>30 A</b> | Windscreen wipers slow/fast speed.                                                                                                                   |
| <b>F13</b> | <b>40 A</b> | Built-in systems interface supply (ignition positive).                                                                                               |
| <b>F14</b> | -           | Not used.                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>F15</b> | <b>10 A</b> | Right-hand main beam headlamp.                                                                                                                       |
| <b>F16</b> | <b>10 A</b> | Left-hand main beam headlamp.                                                                                                                        |
| <b>F17</b> | <b>15 A</b> | Left-hand dipped headlamp.                                                                                                                           |
| <b>F18</b> | <b>15 A</b> | Right-hand dipped headlamp.                                                                                                                          |
| <b>F19</b> | <b>15 A</b> | Oil vapour heater (1.6 litre VTi 16V), purge canister electrovalve (1.6 litre VTi 16V), oxygen sensors (petrol), air cooling electrovalves (Diesel). |
| <b>F20</b> | <b>10 A</b> | Electronic thermostat, variable timing electrovalves, Turbo pressure regulation electrovalve (Diesel), engine coolant level detector (Diesel).       |
| <b>F21</b> | <b>5 A</b>  | Fan assembly relay supply, Valvetronic relay control (1.6 litre VTi 16V), Turbo cooling (1.6 litre THP 16V), air flow sensor (1.6 litre HDI).        |

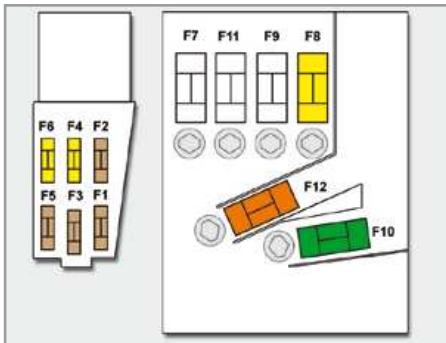


Table of mini and midi-fuses over the battery

| Fuse N° | Rating    | Functions                                                              |
|---------|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| F1      | -         | Not used.                                                              |
| F2      | 5 A       | Dual-function brake switch.                                            |
| F3      | 5 A       | Battery charge unit.                                                   |
| F4      | 25 A      | ABS/ESP electrovalves.                                                 |
| F5      | -         | Not used.                                                              |
| F6      | 15 A      | Automatic gearbox.                                                     |
| F7*     | 80 A      | Power steering electropump assembly.                                   |
| F8*     | 60 A      | Fan assembly.                                                          |
| F9*     | 70 A/30 A | Pre-heat unit (Diesel)/Valvetronic electric motor (1.6 litre THP 16V). |
| F10*    | 40 A      | ABS/ESP electropump assembly.                                          |
| F11*    | 100 A     | Switching and protection unit.                                         |
| F12*    | -         | Not used.                                                              |

Table of maxi-fuses

| Fuse N° | Rating | Functions                      |
|---------|--------|--------------------------------|
| MF1*    | -      | Not used.                      |
| MF2*    | 30 A   | Trailer fusebox.               |
| MF3*    | 50 A   | Passenger compartment fusebox. |
| MF4*    | 80 A   | Built-in systems interface.    |
| MF5*    | 80 A   | Built-in systems interface.    |
| MF6*    | -      | Not used.                      |
| MF7*    | 30 A   | Heated seats.                  |
| MF8*    | 20 A   | Headlamp wash.                 |

\* The midi-fuses and maxi-fuses provide additional protection for the electrical systems. All work on these types of fuse must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer.

## BATTERY

### Access to the battery



The battery is located under the bonnet. For access to it:

- ☞ open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch,
- ☞ secure the bonnet stay,
- ☞ remove the plastic cover to gain access to the two terminals,
- ☞ unclip the fusebox to remove the battery, if necessary.

### Disconnecting the cables

- ☞ Raise the locking tab fully.



### Reconnecting the cables

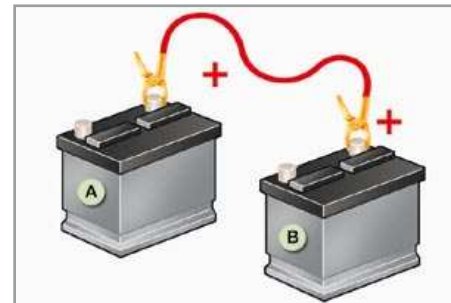
- ☞ Position the open clip 1 of the cable on the positive terminal (+) of the battery.
- ☞ Press vertically on the clip 1 to position it correctly against the battery.
- ☞ Lock the clip by lowering the tab 2.



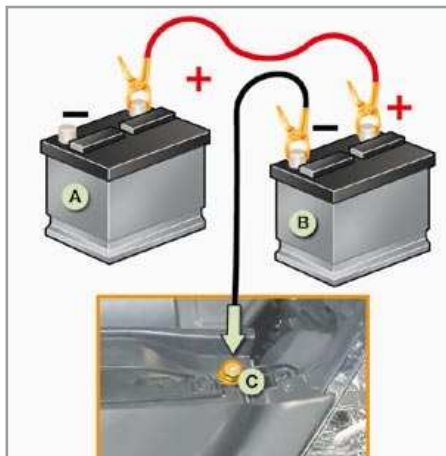
Do not force the tab as locking will not be possible if the clip is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

### Starting using another battery

- ☞ Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A**, then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B**.



- ✎ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B**.
- ✎ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.



- ✎ Operate the starter, let the engine run.
- ✎ Wait until the engine returns to idle and disconnect the cables.

### Charging the battery using a battery charger

- ✎ Disconnect the battery from the vehicle.
- ✎ Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
- ✎ Reconnect starting with the negative terminal (-).
- ✎ Check that the terminals and connectors are clean. If they are covered with sulphate (whitish or greenish deposit), remove them and clean them.



The batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.

Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.



To avoid discharging the battery, do not leave the lights on repeatedly with the ignition off (refer to the "Energy economy mode" paragraph).

It is advisable to disconnect the battery if the vehicle is to be left unused for more than one month.



Do not disconnect the terminals while the engine is running.  
Do not charge the batteries without disconnecting the terminals first.

### Before disconnecting the battery

Wait 2 minutes after switching off the ignition before disconnecting the battery.

Close the roof, the windows and the doors before disconnecting the battery.

### Following reconnection of the battery

Following reconnection of the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to permit initialisation of the electronic systems. However, if slight difficulties are encountered following this operation, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise:

- the remote control key,
- the electric windows and the automatic partial opening of the door windows,
- the GPS satellite navigation system.

## LOAD REDUCTION MODE

System which manages the use of certain functions in relation to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning, the "AIRWAVE" systems, the heated rear screen...

Certain deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

## ENERGY ECONOMY MODE

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlights, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of thirty minutes.

## Switching to economy mode

Once the thirty minutes are over, a message appears in the multifunction screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.



If the telephone is being used at this time:

- it will be maintained for 5 minutes with the hands-free kit of your Peugeot Connect Sound or Peugeot Connect Navigation,
- it will still be possible to finish the call with the Peugeot Connect Media.

## Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically next time the vehicle is driven.

- ☞ In order to resume the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:
  - for less than ten minutes, to use the equipment for approximately five minutes,
  - for more than ten minutes, to use the equipment for up to approximately thirty minutes.



Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.

Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.

A flat battery prevents the engine from starting (refer to the "Battery" paragraph).

## CHANGING A WIPER BLADE

### Before removing a front wiper blade

- ☞ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper stalk to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.

### Removing

- ☞ Raise the corresponding wiper arm.
- ☞ Unclip the wiper blade and remove it.

### Fitting

- ☞ Put the corresponding new wiper blade in place and clip it.
- ☞ Fold down the wiper arm carefully.

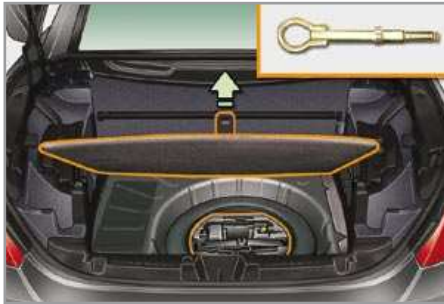
### After fitting a front wiper blade

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Operate the wiper stalk again to park the wiper blades.

## TOWING THE VEHICLE

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

### Access to the tools



The towing eye is installed in the boot under the floor.

For access to it:

- ☞ change to the "coupé" configuration,
- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ raise the floor,
- ☞ secure it by hooking its handle on the boot seal,
- ☞ remove the towing eye from the holder.



### General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must stay at the wheel of the towed vehicle.

Driving on motorways and fast roads is prohibited when towing.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing bar; rope and straps are prohibited.

When towing a vehicle with the engine off, there is no longer any power assistance for braking or steering.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towing bar available...

### Towing your vehicle



- ☞ On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towing bar.
- ☞ Place the gear lever in neutral (position **N** on the automatic gearbox).



Failure to observe this special condition could result in damage to certain components (braking, transmission...) and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

- ☞ Release the steering by turning the ignition key one position and release the parking brake.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive slowly for a limited distance.

## Towing another vehicle



- ☞ On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towing bar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive slowly for a limited distance.

## TOWING A TRAILER, A CARAVAN, ETC.

Towbar suitable for the attachment of a trailer or caravan with additional lighting and signalling.



Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.



We recommend the use of genuine PEUGEOT towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a PEUGEOT dealer.

If the trailer is not fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer, it is imperative that it is fitted using the vehicle's electrical pre-equipment, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Driving with a trailer subjects the towing vehicle to more significant stress and the driver must take particular care.

## Driving advice

### Distribution of loads

- ☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

Refer to the "Technical Data" section for details of the weights and towed loads which apply to your vehicle.

### Side wind

- ☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

### Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

- ☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

## Towing another vehicle



- ☞ On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towing bar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive slowly for a limited distance.

## TOWING A TRAILER, A CARAVAN, ETC.

Towbar suitable for the attachment of a trailer or caravan with additional lighting and signalling.



Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.



We recommend the use of genuine PEUGEOT towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a PEUGEOT dealer.

If the trailer is not fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer, it is imperative that it is fitted using the vehicle's electrical pre-equipment, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Driving with a trailer subjects the towing vehicle to more significant stress and the driver must take particular care.

## Driving advice

### Distribution of loads

- ☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

Refer to the "Technical Data" section for details of the weights and towed loads which apply to your vehicle.

### Side wind

- ☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

### Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

- ☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towed load on a long incline depends on the gradient and the ambient temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

### Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.

### Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

### Lighting

☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer.



The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically if a genuine PEUGEOT towbar is used.

### VERY COLD CLIMATE SCREEN\*

Removable protective screen which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.



#### Fitting

- ☞ Offer up the very cold climate screen to the front of the lower section of the front bumper.
- ☞ Press around its edge to engage its fixing clips one by one.

#### Removal

- ☞ Use a screwdriver as a lever to release each fixing clip in turn.



Do not forget to remove the very cold climate screen:

- when the ambient temperature exceeds 10 °C,
- when towing,
- at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

### ACCESSORIES

A wide range of accessories and genuine parts is offered by the PEUGEOT dealer network.

These accessories and parts have been tested and approved for reliability and safety.

They are all adapted to your vehicle and benefit from PEUGEOT's recommendation and warranty.

#### "Comfort":

windstop, cover for windstop, reading lamp, parking sensors...

#### "Transport solutions":

boot liner, towbar-mounted bicycle carrier, towbars, towbar wiring harnesses...

The trailer towbar and its wiring harness must be fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer.

\* According to country.

The maximum towed load on a long incline depends on the gradient and the ambient temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

### Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.

### Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

### Lighting

☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer.



The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically if a genuine PEUGEOT towbar is used.

### VERY COLD CLIMATE SCREEN\*

Removable protective screen which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.



#### Fitting

- ☞ Offer up the very cold climate screen to the front of the lower section of the front bumper.
- ☞ Press around its edge to engage its fixing clips one by one.

#### Removal

- ☞ Use a screwdriver as a lever to release each fixing clip in turn.



Do not forget to remove the very cold climate screen:

- when the ambient temperature exceeds 10 °C,
- when towing,
- at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

### ACCESSORIES

A wide range of accessories and genuine parts is offered by the PEUGEOT dealer network.

These accessories and parts have been tested and approved for reliability and safety.

They are all adapted to your vehicle and benefit from PEUGEOT's recommendation and warranty.

#### "Comfort":

windstop, cover for windstop, reading lamp, parking sensors...

#### "Transport solutions":

boot liner, towbar-mounted bicycle carrier, towbars, towbar wiring harnesses...

The trailer towbar and its wiring harness must be fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer.

\* According to country.

The maximum towed load on a long incline depends on the gradient and the ambient temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

### Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.

### Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

### Lighting

☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer.



The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically if a genuine PEUGEOT towbar is used.

### VERY COLD CLIMATE SCREEN\*

Removable protective screen which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.



#### Fitting

- ☞ Offer up the very cold climate screen to the front of the lower section of the front bumper.
- ☞ Press around its edge to engage its fixing clips one by one.

#### Removal

- ☞ Use a screwdriver as a lever to release each fixing clip in turn.



Do not forget to remove the very cold climate screen:

- when the ambient temperature exceeds 10 °C,
- when towing,
- at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

### ACCESSORIES

A wide range of accessories and genuine parts is offered by the PEUGEOT dealer network.

These accessories and parts have been tested and approved for reliability and safety.

They are all adapted to your vehicle and benefit from PEUGEOT's recommendation and warranty.

#### "Comfort":

windstop, cover for windstop, reading lamp, parking sensors...

#### "Transport solutions":

boot liner, towbar-mounted bicycle carrier, towbars, towbar wiring harnesses...

The trailer towbar and its wiring harness must be fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer.

\* According to country.

**"Styling":**

alloy wheels, front spoiler.

**"Safety and security":**

anti-theft alarm, security wheel bolts, breathalyser, first aid kit, warning triangle, high visibility vest, stolen vehicle tracking system, child booster cushions...

**"Protection":**

mats\*\*, bumper protection strips, vehicle protective cover...

\*\* To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned and secured correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

**"Multimedia":**

portable satellite navigation systems, Bluetooth hands-free kit, DVD player, USB Box...

**Installation of radio communication transmitters**

Before installing on your vehicle any after-market radio communication transmitter with external aerial, we recommend that you contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

The PEUGEOT dealer network will give you the specification for transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).



Depending on the legislation in force in the country, it may be compulsory to have a high visibility safety vest, warning triangle and spare bulbs and fuses available in the vehicle.



The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by PEUGEOT may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system and excessive electrical consumption.

Please note this specific warning. You are advised to contact a PEUGEOT representative to be shown the range of recommended equipment and accessories.

| MODELS:                           | ENGINES AND GEARBOXES           |                                 |                                 |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Model codes:<br>4B...             | 5FS-0                           | 5FX-H                           | 5FT-F                           |
| <b>PETROL ENGINES</b>             | <b>1.6 litre VTi 16V 120 hp</b> | <b>1.6 litre THP 16V 150 hp</b> | <b>1.6 litre THP 16V 140 hp</b> |
| Cubic capacity (cc)               | 1 598                           | 1 598                           |                                 |
| Bore x stroke (mm)                | 77 x 85.8                       | 77 x 85.8                       |                                 |
| Max power: EU standard (kW)       | 88                              | 110                             | 103                             |
| Max power engine speed (rpm)      | 6 000                           | 5 800                           | 6 000                           |
| Max torque: EU standard (Nm)      | 160                             | 240                             |                                 |
| Max torque engine speed (rpm)     | 4 250                           | 1 400                           |                                 |
| Fuel                              | Unleaded                        | Unleaded                        |                                 |
| Catalytic converter               | Yes                             | Yes                             |                                 |
| <b>GEARBOXES</b>                  | Manual<br>(5-speed)             | Manual<br>(6-speed)             | Automatic<br>(4-speed)          |
| <b>OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)</b> |                                 |                                 |                                 |
| Engine (with filter replacement)  | 4.25                            | 4.25                            | 4.25                            |

| MODELS:                           | ENGINES AND GEARBOXES           |                        |                                 |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Model codes:<br>4B...             | 5FV-8                           | 5FV-A                  | 5FU-8                           |
| <b>PETROL ENGINES</b>             | <b>1.6 litre THP 16V 156 hp</b> |                        | <b>1.6 litre THP 16V 200 hp</b> |
| Cubic capacity (cc)               | 1 598                           |                        | 1 598                           |
| Bore x stroke (mm)                | 77 x 85.8                       |                        | 77 x 85.8                       |
| Max power: EU standard (kW)       | 115                             |                        | 147                             |
| Max power engine speed (rpm)      | 6 000                           |                        | 5 500                           |
| Max torque: EU standard (Nm)      | 240                             |                        | 275                             |
| Max torque engine speed (rpm)     | 1 400                           |                        | 1 700                           |
| Fuel                              | Unleaded                        |                        | Unleaded                        |
| Catalytic converter               | Yes                             |                        | Yes                             |
| <b>GEARBOXES</b>                  | Manual<br>(6-speed)             | Automatic<br>(6-speed) | Manual<br>(6-speed)             |
| <b>OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)</b> |                                 |                        |                                 |
| Engine (with filter replacement)  | 4.25                            | 4.25                   | 4.25                            |

| MODELS:                           | ENGINES AND GEARBOXES                 |                                     |                                     |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Model codes:<br>4B...             | 9HR-8                                 | RHR-8                               | RHH-A                               |
| <b>DIESEL ENGINES</b>             | <b>1.6 litre Turbo HDI<br/>110 hp</b> | <b>2 litre Turbo HDI<br/>136 hp</b> | <b>2 litre Turbo HDI<br/>163 hp</b> |
| Cubic capacity (cc)               | 1 560                                 | 1 997                               | 1 997                               |
| Bore x stroke (mm)                | 75 x 88.3                             | 85 x 88                             | 85 x 88                             |
| Max power: EU standard (kW)       | 82                                    | 103                                 | 120                                 |
| Max power engine speed (rpm)      | 3 500                                 | 4 000                               | 4 000                               |
| Max torque: EU standard (Nm)      | 276                                   | 320                                 | 340                                 |
| Max torque engine speed (rpm)     | 1 500                                 | 2 000                               | 2 000                               |
| Fuel                              | Diesel                                | Diesel                              | Diesel                              |
| Catalytic converter               | Yes                                   | Yes                                 | Yes                                 |
| Particle emission filter          | Yes                                   | Yes                                 | Yes                                 |
| <b>GEARBOXES</b>                  | Manual<br>(6-speed)                   | Manual<br>(6-speed)                 | Automatic<br>(6-speed)              |
| <b>OIL CAPACITIES (in litres)</b> |                                       |                                     |                                     |
| Engine (with filter replacement)  | 3.75                                  | 5.25                                | -                                   |

| WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)                                   |                          |                          |                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| Petrol engines                                                    | 1.6 litre VTi 16V 120 hp | 1.6 litre THP 16V 150 hp | 1.6 litre THP 16V 140 hp |
| Gearboxes                                                         | Manual                   | Manual                   | Auto.                    |
| Model codes: 4B...                                                | 5FS-0                    | 5FX-H                    | 5FT-F                    |
| - Unladen weight                                                  | 1 480                    | 1 512                    | 1 523                    |
| - Kerb weight                                                     | 1 555                    | 1 587                    | 1 598                    |
| - Payload                                                         | 405                      | 428                      | 432                      |
| - Gross vehicle weight (GVW)                                      | 1 885                    | 1 940                    | 1 955                    |
| - Gross train weight (GTW)<br>on a 12 % gradient                  | 2 985                    | 3 340                    | 3 225                    |
| - Braked trailer (within GTW limit)<br>on a 10 % or 12 % gradient | 1 100                    | 1 400                    | 1 270                    |
| - Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit)           | 1 200                    | 1 400                    | 1 270                    |
| - Unbraked trailer                                                | 750                      | 750                      | 750                      |
| - Recommended nose weight                                         | 64                       | 64                       | 64                       |

\* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning: towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for every additional 1 000 metres.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the towed weight.

## WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

| Petrol engines                                                    | 1.6 litre THP 16V 156 hp |           | 1.6 litre THP 16V 200 hp |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------|--------------------------|
| Gearboxes                                                         | Manual                   | Automatic | Manual                   |
| Model codes: 4B...                                                | 5FV-8                    | 5FV-A     | 5FU-8                    |
| - Unladen weight                                                  | 1 515                    | 1 530     | 1 535                    |
| - Kerb weight                                                     | 1 590                    | 1 605     | 1 610                    |
| - Payload                                                         | 425                      | 440       | 449                      |
| - Gross vehicle weight (GVW)                                      | 1 940                    | 1 970     | 1 984                    |
| - Gross train weight (GTW)<br>on a 12 % gradient                  | 3 340                    | 3 240     | 2 784                    |
| - Braked trailer (within GTW limit)<br>on a 10 % or 12 % gradient | 1 400                    | 1 270     | 800                      |
| - Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit)           | 1 400                    | 1 270     | 800                      |
| - Unbraked trailer                                                | 750                      | 750       | 750                      |
| - Recommended nose weight                                         | 64                       | 64        | 64                       |

\* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning: towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for every additional 1 000 metres.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country). High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the towed weight.

## WEIGHTS AND TOWED LOADS (in kg)

| Diesel engines                                                    | 1.6 litre Turbo HDI 110 hp | 2 litre Turbo HDI 136 hp | 2 litre Turbo HDI 163 hp |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| Gearboxes                                                         | Manual                     | Manual                   | Auto.                    |
| Model codes: 4B...                                                | 9HR-8                      | RHR-8                    | RHH-A                    |
| - Unladen weight                                                  | 1 525                      | 1 599                    | 1 625                    |
| - Kerb weight                                                     | 1 600                      | 1 674                    | 1 700                    |
| - Payload                                                         | 400                        | 421                      | 425                      |
| - Gross vehicle weight (GVW)                                      | 1 925                      | 2 020                    | 2 050                    |
| - Gross train weight (GTW)<br>on a 12 % gradient                  | 3 025                      | 3 420                    | 3 550                    |
| - Braked trailer (within GTW limit)<br>on a 10 % or 12 % gradient | 1 100                      | 1 400                    | 1 500                    |
| - Braked trailer* (with load transfer within GTW limit)           | 1 200                      | 1 400                    | 1 500                    |
| - Unbraked trailer                                                | 750                        | 750                      | 750                      |
| - Recommended nose weight                                         | 64                         | 64                       | 64                       |

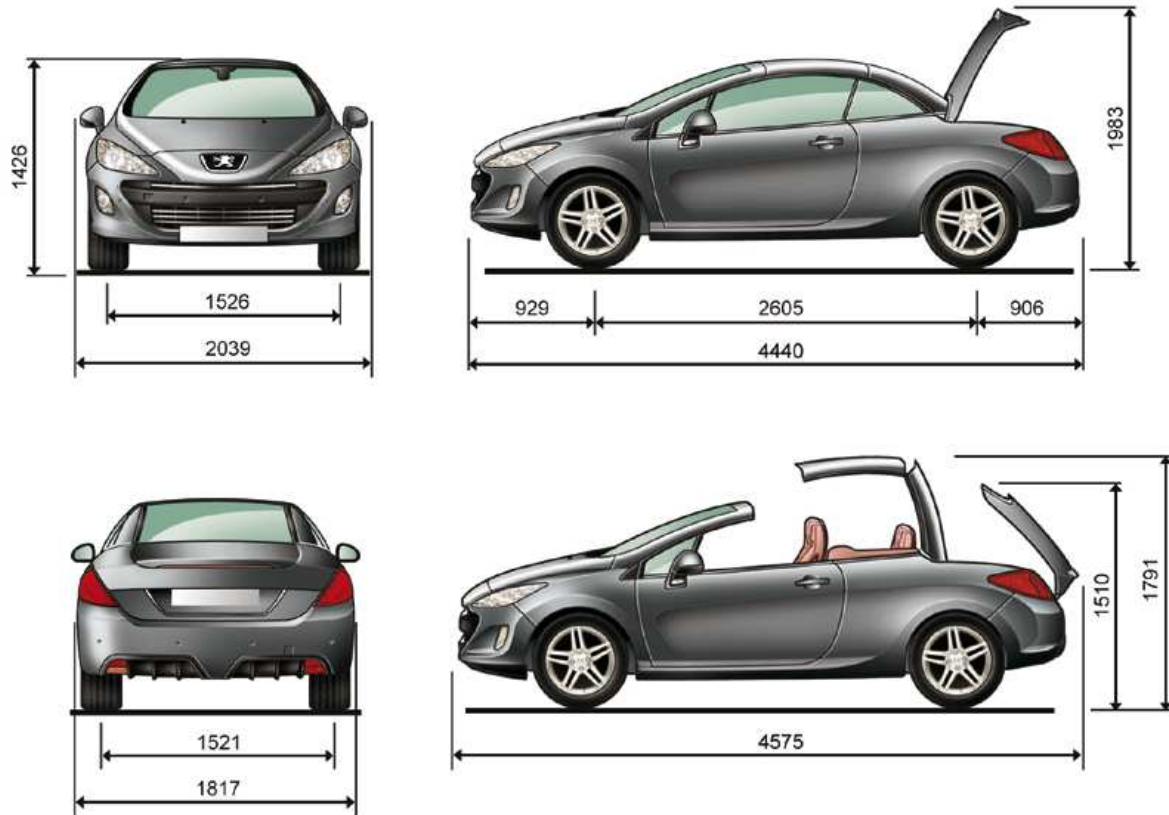
\* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, on condition that the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by the same amount; warning: towing with a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated apply up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for every additional 1 000 metres.

The speed of a towing vehicle must not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h) (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; when the ambient temperature is higher than 37 °C, limit the towed weight.

## DIMENSIONS (IN MM)



## IDENTIFICATION MARKINGS

Various visible markings for the identification and tracking of your vehicle.

**A. Vehicle identification number (VIN) under the bonnet.**

This number is engraved on the bodywork near the damper support. For access to it, raise the plastic cover.

**B. VIN on the windscreen lower cross-member.**

This number is indicated on a self-adhesive label which is visible through the windscreen.

**C. Manufacturer's label.**

This number is indicated on a self-destroying label affixed to the door aperture, below the door striker, on the right-hand side.

**D. Tyre/paint label.**

This label is affixed to the door aperture, on the driver's side.

It bears the following information:

- the tyre inflation pressures, laden and unladen,
- the wheel rim and tyre sizes,
- the brands of tyre recommended by the manufacturer,
- the inflation pressure of the spare wheel,
- the paint colour code.



Wheels which are fitted with 225/40 R18 tyres cannot be fitted with snow chains. For further information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.



The inflation pressures must be checked when the tyres are cold, at least once a month.



If the inflation pressures are too low, this increases fuel consumption.

# EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL

## EMERGENCY CALL



In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the PEUGEOT Emergency team\*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request. The green indicator lamp goes off.

The green indicator lamp remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of communication.

This call is dealt with by the PEUGEOT Emergency team which receives locating information from the vehicle and can send a detailed alert to the appropriate emergency services. In countries in which the team is not operational, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is dealt with directly by the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.



If an impact is detected by the airbag ECU, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

\* This service is subject to conditions and availability.  
Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

## ASSISTANCE CALL



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.  
A voice message confirms that the call has been made\*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.  
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

## OPERATION OF THE SYSTEM



When the ignition is switched on, the green indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



If the orange indicator lamp flashes: there is a system malfunction.  
If the orange indicator lamp is on continuously: the backup battery must be replaced.  
In both cases, consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the PEUGEOT dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes. In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

# EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL USING PEUGEOT CONNECT MEDIA

## EMERGENCY CALL



Warning - the emergency call and the services are only active if the internal telephone is used with a valid SIM card. With a Bluetooth telephone and without a SIM card, these services are not operational.



In an emergency, press the SOS button until an audible signal is heard and a "Confirmation/Cancellation" screen is displayed (if valid SIM card inserted).

A call is made to the PEUGEOT Emergency team which receives locating information from the vehicle and can send a detailed alert to the relevant emergency services.

In countries in which the team is not operational, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent to the emergency services (112).



If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

The message "Deteriorated emergency call" associated with flashing of the orange indicator lamp indicates a malfunction. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

## ASSISTANCE CALL



Press this button for access to PEUGEOT services.



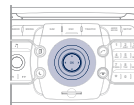
Select "Customer call" to request any information about the PEUGEOT marque.

**Customer call**

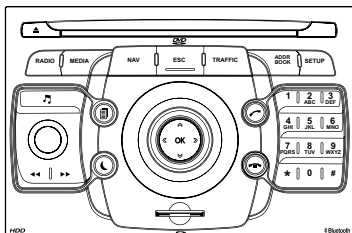


Select "PEUGEOT Assistance" to make a breakdown assistance call.

**PEUGEOT Assistance**



This service is subject to conditions and availability. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer. If you have purchased your vehicle outside the PEUGEOT dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes.



# PEUGEOT CONNECT MEDIA

## MULTIMEDIA AUDIO SYSTEM/BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE GPS EUROPE



The Peugeot Connect Media is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. If it is to be installed in another vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer for configuration of the system.



For safety reasons, it is imperative that the driver carries out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the Peugeot Connect Media switches off following the activation of the Energy Economy mode.



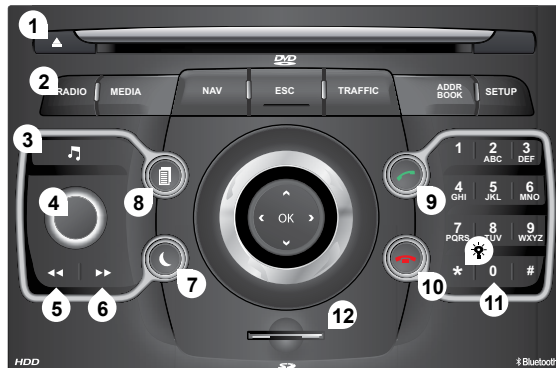
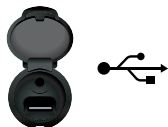
Certain functions described in this handbook will become available during the course of the year.

## CONTENTS

|                                                        |    |            |
|--------------------------------------------------------|----|------------|
| <b>01 First steps</b>                                  | p. | <b>174</b> |
| <b>02 Voice commands and steering mounted controls</b> | p. | <b>176</b> |
| <b>03 General operation</b>                            | p. | <b>179</b> |
| <b>04 Navigation - Guidance</b>                        | p. | <b>184</b> |
| <b>05 Traffic information</b>                          | p. | <b>193</b> |
| <b>06 Radio</b>                                        | p. | <b>195</b> |
| <b>07 Music media players</b>                          | p. | <b>196</b> |
| <b>08 Using the telephone</b>                          | p. | <b>201</b> |
| <b>09 Configuration</b>                                | p. | <b>205</b> |
| <b>10 Screen menu map</b>                              | p. | <b>206</b> |
| <b>Frequently asked questions</b>                      | p. | <b>211</b> |

# 01 FIRST STEPS

## Peugeot Connect Media CONTROL PANEL



Short press: clears the last character.



Long press: activates voice recognition.

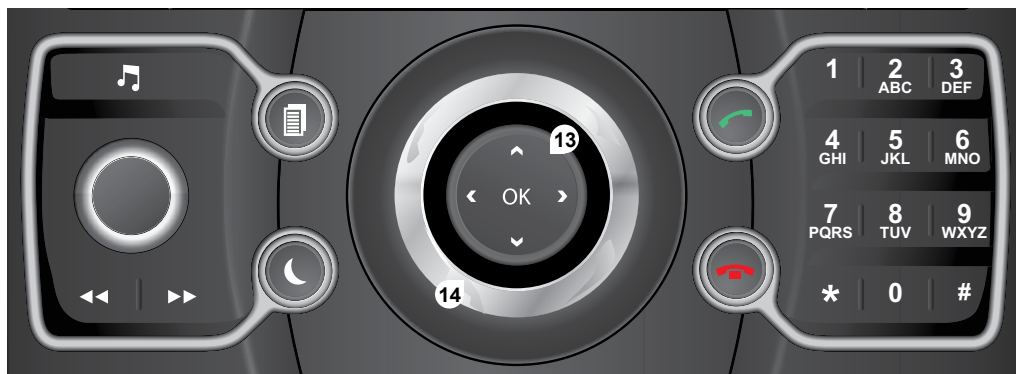
1. CD eject.
2. RADIO: access to the "Radio" Menu.  
Display the list of stations in alphabetical order (FM waveband) or frequency order (AM waveband).  
MEDIA: access to the "Media" Menu (Audio CD, Jukebox, External Device).  
Display the list of tracks. Change of source.  
NAV: access to the "Navigation" Menu and display of the last destinations.  
ESC: abandon the operation in progress.  
Long press: return to the main display.  
TRAFFIC: access to the "Traffic" Menu (function described in detail in sections 02 and 10).

3. ADDR BOOK: access to the "Address book" Menu (function described in detail in section 10).  
SETUP: access to the "SETUP" Menu (configuration) (function described in detail in sections 02 and 10).  
Long press: GPS coverage.
4. Audio settings (Balance/Fader, Bass/Treble, Musical Ambience...).
5. Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including message and navigation alert).  
Long press: reinitialisation of the system.  
Short press: mute.
6. Automatic search for a radio station on a lower frequency.  
Selection of the previous CD or MP3 track.

6. Automatic search for a radio station on a higher frequency.  
Selection of the next CD or MP3 track.
7. Normal display or black screen.
8. Selection of the successive display on the screen of "MAP"/"NAV" (if navigation is in progress)/"TEL" (if a conversation is in progress)/"RADIO" or "MEDIA" currently being played.
9. PICK UP: access to the "Phone" menu.  
With Bluetooth connection, accept an incoming call.
10. HANG UP: access to the "Phone" menu.  
Hang up the current call or refuse an incoming call, with Bluetooth connection.
11. Entering of numbers or letters on the alpha-numeric keypad, pre-selection of 10 radio frequencies.
12. SD card reader.

# 01 FIRST STEPS

## Peugeot Connect Media NAVIGATOR



13. OK: confirmation of the highlighted item on the screen.
- 4-direction navigator: press to the left/right.
- When the "RADIO" screen is displayed: selection of the previous/next frequency.
- When "MEDIA" is displayed: selection of the previous/next track.
- When "MAP" or "NAV" is displayed: horizontal movement of the map.
- 4-direction navigator: press up/down.

When "RADIO" is displayed: selection of the previous/next radio station on the list.

When the "MEDIA" screen is displayed: selection of the MP3 directory.

When "MAP" or "NAV" is displayed: vertical movement of the map.

Switch to the next or previous page of a menu.

Movement on the virtual keypad displayed.

14. Rotation of the ring:
- When the "RADIO" screen is displayed: selection of the previous/next radio station on the list.
- When the "MEDIA" screen is displayed: selection of the previous/next CD or MP3 track.
- When "MAP" or "NAV" is displayed: front/rear map zoom.
- Movement of the menu selection cursor.

## 02 VOICE COMMANDS AND STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

### VOICE COMMANDS - VOICE RECO. INITIATION



1

Before using the system for the first time, you are advised to listen to, say and practice the tutorial.

2



Press the SETUP button and select the "Language & Speech" function. Turn the ring and select "Voice control". Activate voice recognition. Select "Tutorial".



The phrases to be spoken according to the context are indicated in the tables below.

Speak and Peugeot Connect Media acts.



Pressing the end of the lighting control stalk activates voice recognition.



| CONTEXT           | SAY                                                                                                                                                  | ACTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>GENERAL</b>    | Help address book<br>Help voice control<br>Help media<br>Help navigation<br>Help telephone<br>Help radio<br>Cancel<br><br>Correction                 | Access to the address book help<br>Access to the voice recognition help<br>Access to the media management help<br>Access to the guidance, navigation help<br>Access to the telephone help<br>Access to the radio help<br>To cancel a voice command which is in progress<br>Request to correct the last voice recognition carried out<br>Clear                                                            |
| <b>RADIO</b>      | Select station<br>Station <tts:stationName><br><br>Read out station list<br>Enter frequency<br><br>Select wave band<br>AM<br>FM<br>TA on<br>TA off   | Select a radio station<br>Select a radio station using its RDS description <tts:station Name> from the RADIO list<br>Listen to the list of stations available<br>Listen to the frequency of the current radio station<br>Choose the frequency waveband (AM or FM)<br>Change the frequency waveband to AM<br>Change the frequency waveband to FM<br>Activate Traffic Info (TA)<br>Deactivate Traffic Info |
| <b>NAVIGATION</b> | Destination input<br><br>Voice advice off<br>Voice advice on<br>Save address<br>Start guidance<br><br>Abort guidance<br>Navigate entry<br>POI Search | Command to enter a new destination address<br>Deactivate the spoken guidance instructions<br>Activate the spoken guidance instructions<br>Save an address in the address book<br>Start guidance (once the address has been entered)<br>Stop the guidance<br>Start guidance to an entry in the address book<br>Start guidance to a point of interest                                                      |

## 02 VOICE COMMANDS AND STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

### VOICE COMMANDS - VOICE RECO. INITIATION



| CONTEXT             | SAY                                                                                                                                 | ACTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>MEDIA</b>        | Media<br>Select media<br>Single slot<br>Jukebox<br>USB<br>External device<br>SD-Card<br>Track <1 - 1 000><br><br>Folder <1 - 1 000> | Select the MEDIA source<br>Choose a source<br>Select the CD player source<br>Select the Jukebox source<br>Select the USB player source<br>Select the audio AUX input source<br>Select the SD card source<br>Select a specific track (number between 1 and 1 000) on the active MEDIUM<br>Select a Folder (number between 1 and 1 000) on the active MEDIUM |
| <b>TELEPHONE</b>    | Phone menu<br>Enter number<br>Phone book<br>Dial<br>Save number<br>Accept<br>Reject                                                 | Open the Telephone Menu<br>Enter a telephone number to be called<br>Open the phone book<br>Make a call<br>Save a number in the phone book<br>Accept an incoming call<br>Reject an incoming call                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>ADDRESS BOOK</b> | Address book menu<br>Call <entry><br><br>Navigate <entry>                                                                           | Open the address book<br>Call file using its <file> description as described in the address book<br>Start guidance to an address in the address book using its <file> description                                                                                                                                                                          |

## 02 VOICE COMMANDS AND STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

### STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

Wiper stalk: display of "RADIO" and "MEDIA".

Lighting stalk: activation of the voice command by means of a short press; indication of the current navigation instruction by means of a long press.

RADIO: selection of the next stored station.  
Audio CD: selection of the next track.  
If "MEDIA" is displayed on the screen:  
MP3 CD/CARD/JUKEBOX: selection of the next folder.  
Selection of the next entry in the address book.

RADIO: automatic search for a higher frequency.  
CD/SD CARD/JUKEBOX: selection of the next track.  
CD/SD CARD/JUKEBOX: continuous press: fast forward play.

Volume increase.

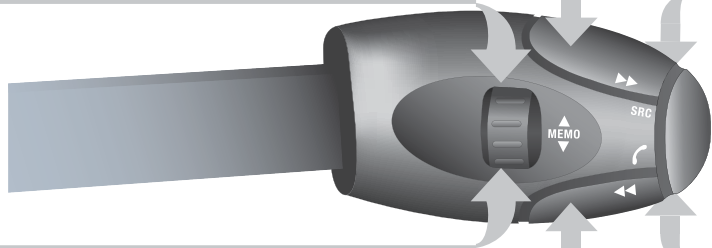
- Change the sound source.
- Make a call from the address book.
- Pick up/Hang up the telephone.
- Press for more than 2 seconds: access to the address book.

Mute: by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.  
Restore the sound: by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Volume decrease.

RADIO: selection of the previous stored station.  
Audio CD: selection of the previous track.  
If "MEDIA" is displayed on the screen:  
MP3 CD/SD CARD/JUKEBOX: selection of the previous folder.  
Selection of the previous entry in the address book.

RADIO: automatic search for a lower frequency.  
CD/SD CARD/JUKEBOX: selection of the previous track.  
CD/SD CARD/JUKEBOX: continuous press: fast backward play.



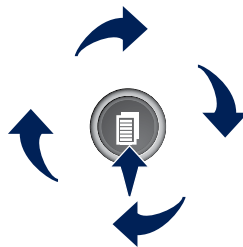
## 03 GENERAL OPERATION

### DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT

Press the MODE button several times in succession to gain access to the following displays:

**RADIO/MUSIC MEDIA/VIDEO**

**TELEPHONE**  
(If a conversation is in progress)



**FULL SCREEN MAP**

**NAVIGATION**  
(If guidance is in progress)



#### **SETUP:**

access to the "SETUP" Menu: system language\* and voice functions\*, voice initialisation (section 09), date and time\*, display, unit and system parameters.

\* Available according to model.



#### **TRAFFIC:**

access to the Traffic Menu: display of the current traffic alerts.



#### **MEDIA:**

"DVD-audio" menu  
"DVD-Video" menu



Long press: access to the GPS coverage and to the demonstration mode.

For maintenance of the screen, the use of a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) is recommended, without any additional product.



For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" section of this handbook.

# 03 GENERAL OPERATION

## DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT



Pressing OK gives access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen.

### NAVIGATION (IF GUIDANCE IS IN PROGRESS):

1 **Abort guidance**

1 **Repeat advice**

1 **Block road**

2 Unblock

2 More

2 Less

2 Calculate

2 Zoom/Scroll

2 Browse route

1 **Route info**

2 Show destination



2 Trip info

3 Route type

3 Avoid

3 Satellites

3 Stopovers

2 Browse route

2 Zoom/Scroll

1 **Voice advice**

1 **Route options**

2 Route type

2 Route dynamics

2 Avoidance criteria

2 Recalculate

### TELEPHONE:

1 **End call**

1 **Hold call**

1 **Dial**

1 **DTMF-Tones**

1 **Private mode**

1 **Micro off**

### MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS:

1 **TA**

1 **Play options**

2 Normal order

2 Random track

2 Scan

1 **Select media**

# 03 GENERAL OPERATION

## DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT



### RADIO:

#### 1 In FM mode

- 2 TA
- 2 RDS
- 2 Radiotext
- 2 Regional prog.

#### 2 AM

#### 1 In AM mode

- 2 TA
- 2 Refresh AM list
- 2 FM

### FULL SCREEN MAP:

#### 1 Abort guidance/Resume guidance

#### 1 Set destination/Add stopover

#### 1 POIs nearby

#### 1 Position info



#### 2 Guidance options

#### 3 Navigate to

#### 3 Dial

#### 3 Save position

#### 3 Zoom/Scroll

#### 1 Map Settings

#### 2 2D MAP

#### 2 2.5D MAP

#### 2 3D MAP

#### 2 North Up

#### 2 Heading Up

#### 1 Zoom/Scroll

### AUDIO DVD (LONG PRESS):

#### 1 Stop

#### 2 Group

#### 3 Group 1 .2/n

#### 2 Play options

#### 3 Normal order/Random track/Scan

#### 1 TA

#### 2 Select media

# 03 GENERAL OPERATION

## DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT



### VIDEO DVD (LONG PRESS):

- 1 Play
- 2 Stop
- 2 DVD menus
- 3 DVD menu
- 3 DVD top menu
- 3 List of titles
- 3 List of chapters
- 2 DVD Options
- 3 Audio
- 3 Subtitles
- 3 Angle

Examples:



## Peugeot Connect Media IS:

- the map setting which allows the map to be displayed flat, in perspective or in 3D.

Flat map



Map in perspective



Map in 3D



- configuration of the system by means of voice commands.



## 04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

### SELECTING A DESTINATION

The "NAVIGATION" voice commands are listed in section 02.

During guidance, a long press on the end of the lighting stalk repeats the last guidance instruction.

1



Press the NAV button.



The list of the last 20 destinations appears under the Navigation Menu function.

2



Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press OK to confirm.

**Navigation Menu**



3



Select the "Destination input" function and press OK to confirm.

**Destination input**



4



Select the "Address input" function and press OK to confirm.

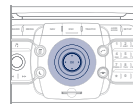
**Address input**



5



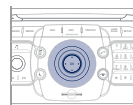
Once the country has been selected, turn the ring and select the town function. Press OK to confirm.



6



Select the letters of the town one by one confirming each time by pressing OK.



A pre-set list (by entering the first few letters) of the towns in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.

## 04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

It is possible to scroll the map using the 4-direction navigator. It is possible to select its orientation via the short-cut menu of the "Full screen map". Press OK then select "Map Settings" and confirm.

7



Turn the ring and select OK.  
Press OK to confirm.



To speed up the process, the post code can be entered directly after selecting the "Postal code" function.  
Use the virtual keypad to enter the letters and digits.

8



Repeat steps 5 to 7 for the "Street" and "House number" functions.



Select the "Save to address book" function to record the address entered in a directory file. Press OK to confirm the selection.  
The Peugeot Connect Media allows more than 4 000 contact records to be saved.



To delete a destination; from steps 1 to 3, select "Choose from last destinations".  
A long press on one of the destinations displays a list of actions from which you can select:

Delete entry

Delete list

9



Then select "Start route guidance" and the press OK to confirm.

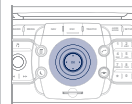
Start route guidance



10



Select the route type:  
"Fast route", "Short route", or  
"Optimized route" and press OK to confirm.



11



Select the road with the colour corresponding to the route chosen and press OK to confirm and start guidance.



It is also possible to select a destination via "Choose from address book" or "Choose from last destinations", by selecting a junction, a town centre, geographic coordinates, or directly on the "Map".

Choose from address book

Choose from last destinations

# 04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

## SETTING AND NAVIGATING TO MY "HOME ADDRESS"

i

To be set as the "Home address", an address must first be entered in the address book, for example from "Destination input"/"Address input" then "Save to address book".

1



Press the NAV button twice to display the Navigation Menu

**Navigation Menu**



2



Select "Destination input" and confirm. Then select "Choose from address book" and confirm.

**Destination input**



3



Select your home address and confirm. Then select "Edit entry" and confirm.

**Edit entry**

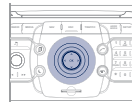


4



Select "Set as Home address" and confirm to save.

**Set as home address**



To start navigation towards "Home", press NAV twice to display the Navigation Menu, select "Destination input" and confirm. Then select "Navigate HOME" and confirm to start guidance.

# 04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

## ROUTE OPTIONS

When the map is displayed on the screen, you can select "Map Settings" then "2D Map/2.5D Map/3D Map/North Up/Heading Up". The display of buildings in 3D mode depends on the progress in town mapping.

1



Press the NAV button.



2



Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press OK to confirm.

**Navigation Menu**



3



Select the "Route options" function and press OK to confirm.

**Route options**



4



Select the "Route type" function and press OK to confirm. This function allows you to change the route type.

**Route type**



5



Select the "Route dynamics" function. This function provides access to the "Traffic independent", "Semi-dynamic" and "Dynamic" options.

**Route dynamics**



6



Select the "Avoidance criteria" function. This function provides access to the "Avoid" options (motorways, toll roads, ferries, tunnels).

**Avoidance criteria**



7



Turn the ring and select the "Recalculate" function to take into account the route options selected. Press OK to confirm.

**Recalculate**



# 04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

## ADDING A STOPOVER

Stopovers can be added to or deleted from the route once the destination has been selected.

1



Press the NAV button.



2



Press the NAV button again or select the "Navigation" Menu function and press OK to confirm.

**"Navigation" Menu**



3



Select the "Stopovers" function and press OK to confirm.

**Stopovers**



4



Select the "Add stopover" function (5 stopovers maximum) and press OK to confirm.

**Add stopover**

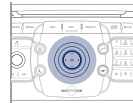


5



Enter a new address, for example.

**Address input**

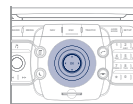


6



Once the new address has been entered, select "Start route guidance" and press OK to confirm.

**Start route guidance**



7



Position the stopover on the list and press OK to confirm.



8

Repeat operations 1 to 7 as many times as necessary then select "Recalculate" and press OK to confirm.



To change the stopovers, repeat operations 1 to 3 and select "Rearrange route" (select a stopover, delete it or move it on the list using the ring to change the order, confirm its new position and finish with "Recalculate").

# 04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

## SEARCHING FOR POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

The points of interest (POIs) indicate all of the service locations in the vicinity (hotels, various businesses, airports...).

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1</p>  <p>Press the NAV button.</p>                                                                                                     | <p>6</p>  <p>Select the "POI in city" function to search for POIs in the city required. Select the country then enter the name of the city using the virtual keypad.</p> <p><b>POI in city</b></p>  |
| <p>2</p>  <p>Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press OK to confirm.</p> <p><b>Navigation Menu</b></p>  | <p></p> <p>A list of cities present in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.</p>                                                                                                                                                             |
| <p>3</p>  <p>Select the "POI search" function and press OK to confirm.</p> <p><b>POI search</b></p>                                        | <p>7</p>  <p>Select the "POI in country" function to search for POIs in the country required.</p> <p><b>POI in country</b></p>                                                                      |
| <p>4</p>  <p>Select the "POI nearby" function to search for POIs around the vehicle.</p> <p><b>POI nearby</b></p>                          | <p>8</p>  <p>Select the "POI near route" function to search for POIs near the route.</p> <p><b>POI near route</b></p>                                                                               |

# 04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE



This icon appears when several POIs are grouped together in the same area. Zooming in on this icon shows details of the POIs.

## LIST OF PRINCIPAL POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

|  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
|  | Service station      |
|  | LPG station          |
|  | Garage               |
|  | PEUGEOT              |
|  | Motor racing circuit |
|  | Covered car park     |
|  | Car park             |
|  | Rest area            |
|  | Hotel                |
|  | Restaurant           |
|  | Refreshment area     |
|  | Picnic area          |
|  | Cafeteria            |

|  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
|  | Airport              |
|  | Railway station      |
|  | Bus station          |
|  | Port                 |
|  | Industrial estate    |
|  | Supermarket          |
|  | Bank                 |
|  | Vending machine      |
|  | Tennis court         |
|  | Swimming pool        |
|  | Golf course          |
|  | Winter sports resort |
|  | Theatre              |

|  |                         |
|--|-------------------------|
|  | Cinema                  |
|  | Camp site               |
|  | Theme parks             |
|  | Hospital                |
|  | Pharmacy                |
|  | Police station          |
|  | School                  |
|  | Post office             |
|  | Museum                  |
|  | Tourist information     |
|  | Automatic speed camera* |
|  | Red light camera*       |
|  | Risk area*              |

\* According to availability in the country.

## 04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

### UPDATING THE RISK AREAS POIs

1



Download the "Risk areas POIs" update file onto an SD card or USB memory stick from the Internet. This service is available on [www.peugeot.fr](http://www.peugeot.fr) or [www.peugeot.co.uk](http://www.peugeot.co.uk).

i

The files must be copied to the root on the chosen medium.

2



Insert the medium (SD card or USB memory stick) containing the POI database into the system's SD card reader or USB port.

3

Press NAV, select Navigation Menu, then "Settings", then "Update personal POI".



**Navigation Menu**

**Settings**

**Update personal POI**



4



Select the medium ("USB" or "SD-Card") used and press OK.



5

Successful downloading is confirmed by a message.

The system restarts.

The Risk Areas POIs version is available on the SETUP\ System menu.

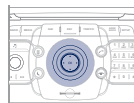
## 04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

### SPOKEN INSTRUCTION SETTINGS

1



When the navigation is displayed on the screen, press OK then select or deselect "Voice advice" to activate or deactivate the spoken guidance instructions. Use the volume button to adjust the volume.



The volume of the Risk Areas POIs alert can only be adjusted during this type of alert.

### POINTS OF INTEREST AND RISK AREAS SETTINGS

1



Press the NAV button.



2



Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press OK to confirm.

**Navigation Menu**

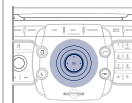


3



Select the "Settings" function and press OK to confirm.

**Settings**



4



Select the "POI categories on Map" function to select the POIs to be displayed on the map by default.

**POI categories on Map**



5



Select "Set parameters for risk areas" to gain access to the "Display on map", "Visual alert" and "Sound alert" functions.

**Set parameters for risk areas**



# 05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

## CONFIGURE THE FILTERING AND DISPLAYING OF THE TMC MESSAGES

1



Press the TRAFFIC button.



The list of TMC messages appears under the Traffic Menu sorted in order of proximity.

2



Press the TRAFFIC button again or select the Traffic Menu function and press OK to confirm.

**Traffic Menu**



3



Select "Select preferred list" and press OK to confirm.



The TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages provide information relating to traffic and weather conditions, received in real time and transmitted to the driver audibly and visually on the navigation map. The guidance system can then suggest an alternative route.

4



Select the filter of your choice:

**Messages on route**

**Only warnings on route**

**All warning messages**

**All messages**



5



Select "Geo. Filter".

**Geo. Filter**



i

When all of the messages on the route are selected, the addition of a geographic filter is recommended (within a radius of 3 miles (5 km) for example) to reduce the number of messages displayed on the map. The geographic filter follows the movement of the vehicle.

i

The filters are independent and their results are concealed. We recommend:

- a filter over 6 miles (10 km) around the vehicle in heavy traffic,
- a filter over 30 miles (50 km) around the vehicle or a filter on the route on motorway journeys.

# 05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

## PRINCIPAL TMC SYMBOLS

1 Black and blue triangle: general information, for example:



Weather reports



Wind



Parking



Traffic reports



Fog



Snow/ice

2 Red and yellow triangle: traffic information, par example:



Modified signage



Slippery surface



Delay



Risk of explosion



Demonstration



No entry



Narrow carriageway



Accident



Roadworks



Road closed



Danger



Traffic jam

## RECEIVING TA MESSAGES



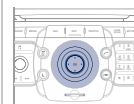
- the station transmits TA messages.
- the station does not transmit TA messages.
- TA messages are not activated.

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

1



With the current audio source displayed on the screen, press the dial.



2

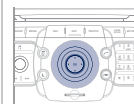
The shortcut menu for the source appears and gives access to:

TA

3



Select Traffic Announcements (TA) and press the dial to confirm and go to the associated settings.



# 06 RADIO

## SELECTING A STATION

1



Press the RADIO button to display the list of stations received locally sorted in alphabetical order. Select the station required by turning the ring and press to confirm.



While listening to the radio, press buttons ◀ and ▶ for the automatic search for a lower or higher frequency.



When the "RADIO" screen is displayed, turn the ring or use the 4-direction navigator to select the previous or next station on the list.



Press one of the buttons on the numeric keypad for more than 2 seconds to store the current station. A bleep confirms that it has been stored. Press the button on the numeric keypad to recall the stored radio station.

The external environment (hill, building, tunnel, underground car park...) may interfere with the reception, including in RDS following mode. This phenomenon is a normal result of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not in any way indicate a failure of the audio equipment.

## RDS - REGIONAL MODE

1

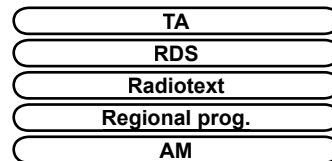


When the current radio station is displayed on the screen, press OK.



2

The radio source short-cuts menu appears and provides access to the following short-cuts:



Select the function required and press OK to confirm to gain access to the corresponding settings.



RDS, if displayed, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

# 07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

## CD, MP3/WMA CD, MP3/WMA SD CARD/ USB PLAYER

### INFORMATION AND ADVICE



The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1, 2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3 and the WMA format, an abbreviation of Windows Media Audio and the property of Microsoft, are audio compression standards which permit the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.



Connecting an iPod:

To play MP3 type files, connect the iPod using the USB port (limited functions).

To play iTunes files, connect the iPod using the auxiliary socket (AUX).



In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.

If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.



In order to be read, a USB memory stick must be formatted to FAT 32.



The audio equipment will only play audio files with the extension ".mp3" with a speed of between 8 Kbps and 320 Kbps and the extension ".wma" with a speed of between 5 Kbps and 384 Kbps. It also supports the VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other type of file (.mp4, .m3u...) can be played.



It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.



During play, exit the "SD-Card" or "USB" source before removing the SD card or the USB memory stick from its port.



To avoid any risk of theft, remove the SD card or the USB memory stick when you leave your vehicle with the roof open.

# 07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

## SELECTING/PLAYING

### CD, MP3/WMA CD, MP3/WMA SD CARD/ USB PLAYER

MP3 CDs, SD cards or USB peripherals are the compatible sources.

- 1** Insert the audio or MP3 CD in the player, the SD card in the card reader or the USB peripheral in the USB port. Play begins automatically.



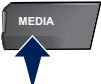
The list of tracks or MP3/WMA files appears under "Media" Menu.

- 2**  Press this button.



- 3**  When the "MEDIA" screen is displayed, turn the ring up or down to select the previous or next compatible source.



- 4**  Press the MEDIA button.



- 5**  Press the MEDIA button again or select the "Media" Menu function and press OK to confirm.

**"Media" Menu**



- 6**  Select the "Select media" function and press OK to confirm.

**Select media**



- 7**  Select the music source required. Press OK to confirm. Play begins.



The playing and displaying of an MP3/WMA compilation may depend on the recording programme and/or the parameters used. We recommend the ISO 9660 recording standard.

# 07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

## JUKEBOX

### COPYING A CD, A USB MEMORY STICK OR AN SD CARD ONTO THE HARD DISK

When copying is in progress, switching off the ignition will interrupt the process but it will resume directly when the ignition is switched on again.

1



Insert an audio/MP3 CD, a USB memory stick or an SD card.



!

Check that the active MEDIA source is that of the medium used (CD, USB or SD card).

2



Press the MEDIA button. Press the MEDIA button again or select Media Menu and press OK to confirm.



3



Select "Jukebox management" then "Add files" and press OK at each step to confirm.

**Add files**



4



Select "Add files from MP3-Disc" for example and press OK to validate.

**Add files from MP3-Disc**



5



Select the tracks required then "Rip selection" or select all of the tracks using "Rip all".



6



Select "[New folder]" to create a new folder or select an existing folder (created previously).

**New folder**



7



"Do you want to change the names of the tracks that will be ripped?": select "Yes" to change them or "No".

**Yes No**



8



To copy an MP3 CD, then select "Real time ripping", "Fast ripping"/"High quality (192 kbit/sec)" or "Standard quality (128 kbit/sec)" then select "Start ripping".



9



Confirm the warning message by pressing "OK" to start the copy.

**OK**



# 07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

## JUKEBOX RENAMING OR DELETING AN ALBUM

**i** Check that the active source is not the Jukebox in order to be able to rename or delete a track/folder.

**1** Activate the playing of a source other than the Jukebox (CD, radio, etc...).

**2**  Press the MEDIA button.



**3**  Press the MEDIA button again or select Media Menu and press OK to confirm.



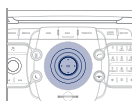
**4**  Select "Jukebox management" and press OK to confirm.

**Jukebox management**



**5**  Select "Modify content" and press OK confirm.

**Modify content**



## LISTENING TO THE JUKEBOX

**1**  Press the MEDIA button.  
Press the MEDIA button again or select Media Menu and press OK to confirm.



**2**  Select "Jukebox management" and press OK to confirm.



**3**  Select "Play options" and press OK to confirm.  
Select "Folders & Files" or "Playlists" then press OK to confirm.



Press the ESC button to return to the first file level.  
Playlists can be created in the Jukebox.  
Media Menu> Jukebox management> Create new playlist. Add the tracks required one by one then save the change. The "Playlists" play mode must then be selected.

# 07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

## VIEWING A VIDEO DVD

1

Insert the DVD in the player. Play begins automatically.



2



If the DVD does not appear on the screen, press the MODE button to gain access to the "MEDIA" screen which displays the DVD screen.



3



Press the MEDIA button to gain access to the DVD menu at any time, or to the functions of the Media Menu which adjust the video (brightness/contrast, image format...).



The 4-direction navigator and the chromed ring allow you to move the DVD selection cursor. Change chapter by pressing the ► or ◀ button.



Select the video source required ("DVD-Video", "External device (AV)"). Press OK to confirm. Play begins.

## USING AN EXTERNAL DEVICE (AUX) AUDIO/VIDEO/RCA CABLE NOT SUPPLIED

1

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, camcorder, camera...) to the RCA socket (white and red for audio; red and yellow for video) in the glove box using a JACK/RCA audio cable.

2



Press the MEDIA button then press it again or select the "Media" Menu function and press OK to confirm.



If the external input is not activated, select "Ext. Device (Aux) management" to activate it.

3



Select "Select media" then "External device (AV)" and press OK to activate it.

External device



4



Select the AUX music source and press OK to confirm. Play begins automatically.



The display and management of the controls is via the portable device.

## 08 USING THE TELEPHONE

### CHOOSING BETWEEN THE BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE/INTERNAL TELEPHONE

1



To activate the Bluetooth telephone or the internal telephone, press PICK UP TEL.



2



Select Phone menu, then "Select phone" then choose between "Telephone off", "Use Bluetooth phone" or "Use internal phone". Press OK at each step to confirm.



!

The system can only be connected to one Bluetooth telephone and one SIM card (Internal telephone) at the same time.

In this case, the phone book is synchronised with the Bluetooth telephone.

# 08 USING THE TELEPHONE

## CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

**!** For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the Peugeot Connect Media must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

**1** Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function. The last telephone connected is reconnected automatically.



**2**  Press the TEL button.



**3**  If no telephone is connected, the system prompts you to "Connect phone". Select "Yes" and press OK to confirm.



**☀** The list of telephones connected previously (4 maximum) appears in the multifunction screen. Select the telephone required then select "Connect phone" for a new connection. Select "Delete pairing" to cancel the connection to the telephone.

\* The services available via the telephone depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth equipment used. Refer to your telephone's manual and your operator to check which services you have access to. A list of mobile telephones which offer the best range of services is available from dealers.

**4**  For a first connection, select "Search phone" and press OK to confirm. Then select the name of the telephone.

**Search phone**

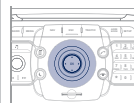


**5**  Enter the authentication code on the telephone. The code to be entered is displayed on the screen.



**i** Once the telephone has been connected, the Peugeot Connect Media can synchronise the address book and the call list. This synchronisation may take a few minutes\*.

**☀**  To change the telephone connected, press the TEL button, then select Phone menu, then "Select phone" then "Connect Bluetooth phone" then select the telephone required or "Search phone". Press OK at each step to confirm.



## 08 USING THE TELEPHONE

### USING THE INTERNAL TELEPHONE WITH A SIM CARD

If you have declined to use the internal telephone for personal calls, you can still connect a Bluetooth telephone to receive your calls on the vehicle's audio system.

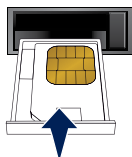
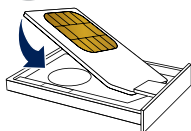
1



Extract the holder by pressing the eject button.



2



Install the SIM card in the holder and then insert it in the slot.

3

To remove the SIM card, repeat step 1.

i

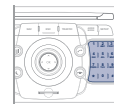
For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the SIM card installation operations must be carried out when stationary.

4



Enter the PIN code on the keypad then select OK and confirm.

**Remember PIN**



💡

When entering your PIN code, tick the "Remember PIN" tab to allow use of the telephone without having to enter this code when it is used subsequently.

5



The system asks "Do you want to switch to the internal phone?", select "Yes" if you wish to use your SIM card for your personal calls. Otherwise, only the emergency call and the services will use the SIM card.



💡

Once the SIM card has been installed, the system can synchronise the address book and the call list. This synchronisation may take a few minutes.

# 08 USING THE TELEPHONE

## RECEIVING A CALL

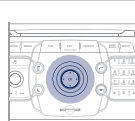
**1** An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

**2** Select the "Yes" tab to accept or "No" to refuse and confirm by pressing OK.



Yes

No



The PICK UP TEL button accepts, the HANG UP TEL button refuses the incoming call.

**3** To hang up, press the HANG UP TEL button or press OK and select "End call" then confirm by pressing OK.



End call



Press the end of the steering mounted control to accept the call or end the call in progress.



## MAKING A CALL

**4** Press the PICK UP TEL button.



The list of the last 20 calls made and received in the vehicle appears under "Phone" menu. You can select a number and press OK to make the call.

**5** Select the "Phone" menu function and press OK to confirm.



"Phone" menu



**6** Select "Dial number", then dial the telephone number using the virtual keypad.



Dial number



It is also possible to select a number from the address book. You can select "Dial from address book". The Peugeot Connect Media can record up to 4 096 entries.

# 09 CONFIGURATION

## SETTING THE DATE AND TIME



This setting operation must be carried out if the battery has been disconnected.

1



Press the SETUP button.



2



Select the "Date & Time" function and press OK to confirm.

**Date & Time**



3



Select the "Set date & time" function and press OK to confirm.

**Set date & time**



4



Make the adjustments using the ring and move on to the next using the 4-direction navigator.  
Press OK to confirm.



Principle of GPS synchronisation (GMT):

1. Confirm the "Synchronise with GPS" selection, the time is then set to GMT universal time, the date is also updated.
2. Using the 4-direction navigator, move the cursor to the time fields and press OK.
3. You can then use the ring to set the time to the time zone of your choice.  
Note that when changing between summer/winter time, the time zone must be changed again manually.

5



Select the "Date format" function and press OK to confirm.  
Select the format required using the ring and press OK to confirm.



6



Select the "Time format" function and press OK to confirm.  
Select the format required using the ring and press OK to confirm.



Pressing the SETUP button for more than 2 seconds permits access to:

**Description of the unit**

**GPS coverage**

**Demo mode**

# 10 SCREEN MENU MAP



## MAIN FUNCTION

### OPTION A

option A1

option A2

### OPTION B...



## "Traffic" Menu

Select preferred list

Messages on route

Only warnings on route

All warning messages

All messages

Geo. Filter

Deactivate PIN

Within 2 miles (3 km)

Within 3 miles (5 km)

Within 6 miles (10 km)

Within 30 miles (50 km)

Read out settings

On confirmation

Incoming messages

TMC station information



## "Media" Menu

Select media

Audio CD/MP3-Disc/DVD-Audio/DVD-Video

Jukebox (Folders & Files)

SD-Card

USB

External device (audio/AV)

Jukebox management

Add files

Create folder

Modify content

Edit playlist

Play options

Folders & Files

Playlists

Memory capacity

Sound settings

Refer to the "Sound settings" menu details of which are shown on the next page.

Video settings

Aspect ratio

Menu language

Display

Brightness

Contrast

Colour

- 3 AUX standard
- 3 Reset video settings
- 2 Ext. Device (Aux) management
- 3 Off/Audio/Audio and Video (AV)



## "Radio" Menu

- 1 Waveband
- 2 FM
- 3 AM
- 2 Manual tune
- 2 Sound settings
- 3 Refer to the "Sound settings" menu below.

## "Sound settings" Menu

- 1 Balance/Fader
- 2 Bass/Treble
- 2 Equalizer
- 3 Linear

- 3 Classic
- 3 Jazz
- 3 Rock/Pop
- 3 Techno
- 3 Vocal
- 2 Mute rear speakers
- 2 Loudness
- 2 Speed dependent volume
- 2 Reset sound settings



## "Navigation" Menu

- 1 Abort guidance/Resume guidance
- 2 Destination input
- 3 Address input
- 4 Country
- 4 City
- 4 Street
- 4 House number

- 4 Start route guidance
- 4 Postal code
- 4 Save to address book
- 4 Intersection
- 4 City district
- 4 Geo position
- 4 MAP
- 3 Navigate HOME
- 3 Choose from last destinations
- 3 Choose from address book
- 2 Stopovers
- 3 Add stopover
- 4 Address input
- 4 Navigate HOME
- 4 Choose from address book
- 4 Choose from last destinations
- 3 Rearrange route
- 3 Replace stopover
- 3 Delete stopover

3 **Recalculate**

4 Fast route

4 Short route

4 Optimized route

2 **POI search**

3 **POI nearby**

3 **POI near destination**

3 **POI in city**

3 **POI in country**

3 **POI near route**

2 **Route options**

3 **Route type**

4 POI near destination

4 Short route

4 Optimized route

4 Subscr. service

2 **Settings**

3 **Route dynamics**

4 Traffic independent

4 Semi-dynamic

4 Dynamic

3 **Avoidance criteria**

4 Avoid motorways

4 Avoid toll roads

4 Avoid tunnels

4 Avoid ferries

3 **Recalculate**



## 1 **"Address book" Menu**

2 **Create new entry**

2 **Show memory status**

2 **Export address book**

2 **Delete all voice entries**

2 **Delete all entries**

2 **Delete folder "My Addresses"**



## 1 **"Phone" menu**

2 **Dial number**

2 **Dial from address book**

2 **Call lists**

2 **Messages**

2 **Select phone**

3 **Telephone off**

3 **Use Bluetooth phone**

3 **Use internal phone**

3 **Connect Bluetooth phone**

4 **Search phone**

5 **Disconnect phone**

5 **Rename phone**

5 **Delete pairing**

5 **Delete all pairings**

5 **Show details**

2 **Settings**

3 **Automatic answering system**

3 **Select ring tone**

3 **Phone/Ring tone volume**

3 **Enter mailbox number**

3 **Internal phone settings**

3 **Automatically accept call**

3 **Signal waiting call (?)**

3 **Show status**

3 **Activate waiting call**

3 **Deactivate waiting call**

3 **Call forward (?)**

3 **Show status**

3 **Activate call forward**

3 **Deactivate call forward**

3 **Suppress own number**

3 **Select network**

3 **Set network automatically**

3 **Set network manually**

3 **Search for networks**

3 **PIN settings**

3 **Change PIN**

4 **Activate PIN**

4 **Deactivate PIN**

3 **Remember PIN**

3 **SIM-card memory status**

SETUP

1 **"SETUP" Menu**

2 **Language & Speech**

3 **Menu language**

4 **Deutsch**

4 **English**

4 **Español**

4 **Français**

4 **Italiano**

4 **Nederlands**

4 **Polski**

4 **Portuguese**

3 **Voice control**

4 **Voice control active**

4 **Tutorial**

5 **Basics**

5 **Examples**

5 **Tips**

4 **Speaker adaptation**

5 **New speaker adaptation**

5 **Delete speaker adaptation**

3 **Voice output volume**

2 **Date & Time**

3 **Set date & time**

3 **Date format**

3 **Time format**

## 2 **Display**

### 3 **Brightness**

### 3 **Colour**

#### 4 Steel

#### 4 blue light (only in day mode)

#### 4 Orange Ray

#### 4 Blue Flame

### 3 **Map colour**

#### 4 Day mode for map

#### 4 Night mode for map

#### 4 Auto. Day/Night for map

## 2 **Units**

### 3 **Temperature**

#### 4 Celsius

#### 4 Fahrenheit

### 3 **Metric/Imperial**

#### 4 km

#### 4 Miles

## 2 **System**

### 3 **Factory reset**

### 3 **Software version**

### 3 **Automatic scrolling**

# FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The table below groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the Peugeot Connect Media.

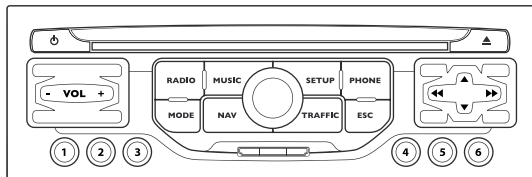
| QUESTION                                                                                   | ANSWER                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | SOLUTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...). | For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).                                  | Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "Linear" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.                                                                                  |
| The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.                            | The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play.<br>The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up.</li> <li>- Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged.</li> <li>- Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section.</li> <li>- The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs.</li> <li>- Due to inadequate quality, certain recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system.</li> </ul> |
| The CD player sound is poor.                                                               | The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                                                                                            | The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiances) are unsuitable.                                                                                                                                                                                | Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

| QUESTION                                                                                                                                                      | ANSWER                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | SOLUTION                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...)                                                                                      | An incorrect waveband is selected.                                                                                                                                                                                             | Press RADIO, select Radio Menu then "Waveband" to return to the waveband on which the stations are stored.                                                      |
| The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...). | The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.                                                       | Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area. |
|                                                                                                                                                               | The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.                                                                                                                     | This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.                                                                               |
|                                                                                                                                                               | The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).                                                                                                          | Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.                                                                                                                    |
| Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.                                                                                                               | During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.                                                                                                                | Deactivate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.                                    |
| With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.                                                                                      | When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the battery charge.<br>The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery. | Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.                                                                                                      |

| QUESTION                                                                                                   | ANSWER                                                                                                                                                        | SOLUTION                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>"TA" is selected.<br/>However, certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.</p> | On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.                                                               | Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (displaying of the traffic information symbols on the map).                                                 |
|                                                                                                            | In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.                                                                | This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.                                                                                   |
| The time taken to calculate a route sometimes seems longer than usual.                                     | The performance of the system may slow down temporarily if a CD/DVD is being copied onto the Jukebox at the same time as a route is being calculated.         | Wait until the CD/DVD has been copied or stop the copying before starting the guidance function.                                                                           |
| I receive a speed camera alert for a speed camera which is not on my route.                                | The system announces all speed cameras positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may detect speed cameras located on nearby or parallel roads. | Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the speed camera.                                                                                                         |
| <p>The speed camera audible warning does not work.</p>                                                     | The audible warning is not active.                                                                                                                            | Activate the audible warning on Navigation Menu, Settings, Set parameters for risk areas.                                                                                  |
|                                                                                                            | The alert volume is set to minimum.                                                                                                                           | Increase the volume of the alert when passing a speed camera.                                                                                                              |
| Does the emergency call function work without a SIM card?                                                  | No, as certain national regulations impose the presence of a SIM card in order to make an emergency call.                                                     | Insert a valid SIM card in the slot.                                                                                                                                       |
| <p>The altitude is not displayed.</p>                                                                      | On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.                                              | Wait until the system has started up completely. Check that there is a GPS coverage of at least 4 satellites (long press on the SETUP button, then select "GPS coverage"). |
|                                                                                                            | Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.                                 | This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the conditions of reception of the GPS signal.                                                                       |

| QUESTION                                                              | ANSWER                                                                                                                                  | SOLUTION                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The route calculation is not successful.                              | The exclusion criteria may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).                             | Check the exclusion criteria on the Navigation Menu ("Route options" - "Avoidance criteria").                                                                       |
| There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD.       | When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take a few seconds. | This phenomenon is normal.                                                                                                                                          |
| I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.                              | The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the equipment may not be visible.                                             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on.</li> <li>- Check that your telephone is visible.</li> </ul> |
|                                                                       | The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.                                                                              | A list of compatible Bluetooth mobile telephones is available from the dealer network.                                                                              |
| The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible. | The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.                                                                             | Increase the volume of the Peugeot Connect Media, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.                                    |
| The system does not play the DVD.                                     | The region protection may not be compatible.                                                                                            | Insert DVDs which have compatible region protection.                                                                                                                |
| I cannot copy the CD to the Jukebox.                                  | The wrong source is selected.                                                                                                           | Change the active source to CD.                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                                       | The CD is copy-protected.                                                                                                               | It is normal that a protected CD cannot be copied.                                                                                                                  |

| QUESTION                                                                                               | ANSWER                                                                                                     | SOLUTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The system does not receive SMS.                                                                       | The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending of the SMS to the system.                                       | Use your SIM card and the internal telephone.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                                                                                                        | The SIM card used is a twin card.                                                                          | Use the original SIM card to receive the SMS.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| I cannot update the hazardous location POIs.                                                           | The Navigation Menu - "Update personal POI" is not displayed.                                              | Check that the medium used for the update (SD card or USB memory stick) is inserted correctly.                                                                                                                                                  |
|                                                                                                        | An error message is displayed at the end of the procedure.                                                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Start the procedure again in full.</li> <li>- Consult a PEUGEOT dealer if the problem persists.</li> <li>- Check that the data on the MEDIUM is supplied by an official partner of PEUGEOT.</li> </ul> |
| The voice frequencies (DTMF) are not active when I am communicating and I press numbers on the keypad. | The numeric buttons on the keypad are only active for calls if the display is in telephone mode.           | To activate them, press the MODE button until the telephone is displayed on the screen.                                                                                                                                                         |
| An accident area which does not concern me is displayed on the screen.                                 | The accident areas are displayed near a point defined on the map and in relation to a direction of travel. | The alert may be triggered when travelling under a road or near a road which has a speed camera.                                                                                                                                                |



# PEUGEOT CONNECT NAVIGATION

## MULTIMEDIA AUDIO SYSTEM/BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE GPS EUROPE ON AN SD CARD



The Peugeot Connect Navigation is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. If it is to be installed in another vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer for configuration of the system.



For safety reasons, the driver should only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the Peugeot Connect Navigation switches off following the activation of Energy Economy mode.



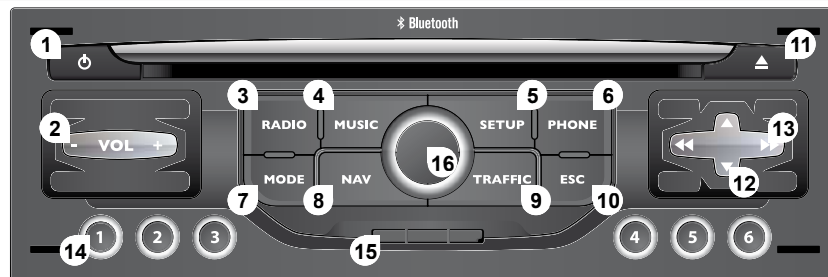
Certain functions described in this handbook will become available during the course of the year.

## CONTENTS

|                                     |               |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>01 First steps</b>               | <b>p. 218</b> |
| <b>02 Steering mounted controls</b> | <b>p. 219</b> |
| <b>03 General operation</b>         | <b>p. 220</b> |
| <b>04 Navigation - Guidance</b>     | <b>p. 223</b> |
| <b>05 Traffic information</b>       | <b>p. 231</b> |
| <b>06 Radio</b>                     | <b>p. 233</b> |
| <b>07 Music media players</b>       | <b>p. 234</b> |
| <b>08 Bluetooth telephone</b>       | <b>p. 237</b> |
| <b>09 Configuration</b>             | <b>p. 239</b> |
| <b>10 Screen menu map</b>           | <b>p. 240</b> |
| <b>Frequently asked questions</b>   | <b>p. 244</b> |

# 01 FIRST STEPS

## Peugeot Connect Navigation CONTROL PANEL

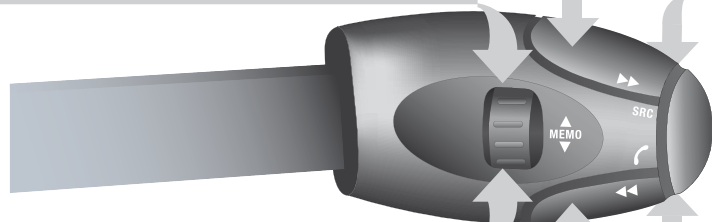


1. Engine not running
  - Short press: on/off.
  - Long press: CD pause, mute for the radio.
 Engine running
  - Short press: CD pause, mute for the radio.
  - Long press: reinitialisation of the system.
2. Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including also navigation messages and alerts)
3. Access to the "Radio" Menu. Display the list of stations.
4. Access to the "Music" Menu. Display the tracks.
- 3 - 4. Long press: access to the audio settings: front/rear fader and left/right balance, bass/treble, equaliser, loudness, automatic volume adjustment, initialise the settings.
5. Access to the "SETUP" menu.  
Long press: access to the GPS coverage and the demonstration mode.
6. Access to the "Phone" Menu. Display the call list.
7. Access to the "MODE" menu.  
Selection of the successive display of: Radio, Map, NAV (if navigation is in progress), Telephone (if a conversation is in progress), Trip computer.  
Long press: display of a black screen (DARK).
8. Access to the "Navigation" Menu. Display the last destinations.
9. Access to the "Traffic" Menu. Display the current traffic alerts.
10. ESC: abandon the operation in progress.
11. CD eject.
12. Selection of the previous/next radio station from the list.  
Selection of the previous/next MP3 folder.
13. Selection of the previous/next radio station.  
Selection of the previous/next CD or MP3 track.  
Selection of the previous/next line of a list.
14. Buttons 1 to 6:  
Selection of the stored radio station.  
Long press: store the current radio station.
15. SD card reader (navigation SD card only).
16. Dial for selection of the screen display and according to the context of the menu  
Short press: contextual menu or confirmation.  
Long press: contextual menu specific to the list displayed.

## 02 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

RADIO: selection of the next stored station.  
Selection of the next entry in the address book.

RADIO: change to the next radio station on the list.  
Long press: automatic search for a higher frequency.  
CD: selection of the next track.  
CD: continuous press: fast forward play.



RADIO: selection of the previous stored station.  
Selection of the previous entry in the address book.

Volume increase.

- Change the sound source.
- Make a call from the address book.
- Pick up/Hang up the telephone.
- Press for more than 2 seconds: access to the address book.

Mute: function activated by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously. Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Volume decrease.

RADIO: change to the previous radio station on the List.  
Long press: automatic search for a lower frequency.  
CD: selection of the previous track.  
CD: continuous press: fast reverse.

## 03 GENERAL OPERATION

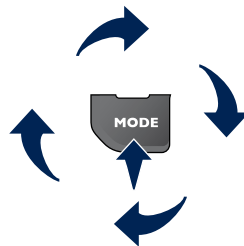
Press the MODE button several times in succession for access to the following menus:

### RADIO/MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS



### TELEPHONE

(If a conversation is in progress)



### FULL SCREEN MAP



### NAVIGATION

(If guidance is in progress)



### SETUP:

system language\*, date and time\*, display, vehicle settings\*, unit and system settings, "Demo mode".

\* Depending on model.



### TRAFFIC:

TMC information and messages.



For cleaning the screen, the use of a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) is recommended, with no additional product.



For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" section.

## 03 GENERAL OPERATION

### DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT



A press on the OK dial gives access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen.

#### NAVIGATION (IF GUIDANCE IS IN PROGRESS):

- 1 **Abort guidance**
- 1 **Repeat advice**
- 1 **Block road**
- 1 **Route info**
- 2 **Show destination**
- 2 **Trip info**
- 3 **Route type**
- 3 **Avoid**
- 3 **Satellites**

2 **Zoom/Scroll**

1 **Voice advice**

1 **Route options**

#### TELEPHONE:

- 1 **End call**
- 1 **Hold call**
- 1 **Dial**
- 1 **DTMF-Tones**
- 1 **Private mode**
- 1 **Micro off**

#### MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS:

- 1 **Traffic info (TA)**
- 1 **Play options**
- 2 **Normal order**
- 2 **Random track**
- 2 **Repeat folder**
- 2 **Scan**
- 1 **Select music**

## 03 GENERAL OPERATION

### DISPLAY ACCORDING TO THE CONTEXT

#### RADIO:

- 1 In FM mode
  - 2 Traffic info (TA)
  - 2 RDS
  - 2 Radiotext
  - 2 Regional prog.
  - 2 AM
- 1 In AM mode
  - 2 TA
  - 2 Refresh AM list
  - 2 FM

#### FULL SCREEN MAP:

- 1 Abort guidance/Resume guidance
- 1 Set destination
- 1 POIs nearby
- 1 Position info
- 1 Map settings
- 1 Zoom/Scroll

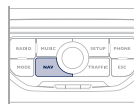
## 04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

### SELECTING A DESTINATION

1



Press the NAV button.



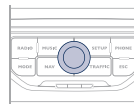
The list of the last 20 destinations appears under the Navigation Menu function.

2



Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

**Navigation Menu**

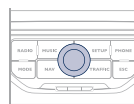


3



Select the "Destination input" function and press the dial to confirm.

**Destination input**



Insert the SD card in the front panel reader and leave it there to use the Navigation functions.

The navigation SD card data must not be modified.

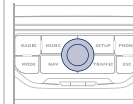
Map data updates are available from PEUGEOT dealers.

4



Select the "Address input" function and press the dial to confirm.

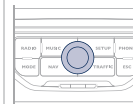
**Address input**



5



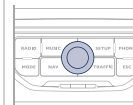
Once the country has been selected, turn the dial and select the town function. Press the dial to confirm.



6



Select the letters of the town one by one confirming each time by pressing the dial.



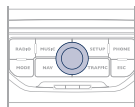
A pre-set list (by entering the first few letters) of the towns in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.

## 04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

7



Turn the dial and select OK.  
Press the dial to confirm.

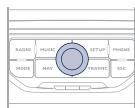


To speed up the process, the post code can be entered directly after selecting the "Postal code" function.  
Use the virtual keypad to enter the letters and digits.

8



Repeat steps 5 to 7 for the "Street" and "House number" functions.



Select the "Save to address book" function to record the address entered in a directory file. Press the dial to confirm the selection. Peugeot Connect Navigation allows up to 500 contact files to be recorded.



During guidance, pressing the end of the lighting stalk repeats the last guidance instruction.

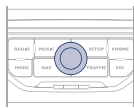


To clear a destination; from steps 1 to 3, select "Choose from last destinations".  
A long press on one of the destinations displays a list of actions from which you can select:  
Delete entry  
Delete list

9



Then select "Start route guidance" and then press the dial to confirm.



**Start route guidance**



Select the route type:  
"Fast route", "Short route" or "Optimized route" and press the dial to confirm.  
It is also possible to select a destination via "Choose from address book" or "Choose from last destinations".

**Choose from address book**

**Choose from last destinations**



### Map settings

You can zoom in/zoom out on the map using the dial.  
It is possible to move the map or select its orientation via the shortcut menu of the FULL SCREEN MAP.  
Press MODE until the map is displayed full screen. Press the dial then select "Map settings". Select "2.5D Map" or "2D Map" and in the latter case, select "North Up" or "Heading Up".

## 04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

### SETTING AND NAVIGATING TO MY "HOME ADDRESS"

i

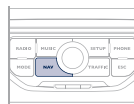
To be set as the "Home address", an address must first be entered in the address book, for example from "Destination input"/"Address input" then "Save to address book".

1



Press the NAV button twice to display the Navigation Menu.

**Navigation Menu**

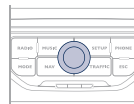


2



Select "Destination input" and confirm. Then select "Choose from address book" and confirm.

**Destination input**

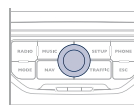


3



Select "Address book" and confirm. Then select "Search entry (complete address book)" and confirm.

**Address book**

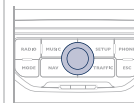


4



Select your home address and confirm. Then select "Edit entry" and confirm.

**Edit entry**



5



Select "Set as home address" and confirm to save.

**Set as "Home address"**



To start navigation towards "Home address", press NAV twice to display the Navigation Menu, select "Destination input" and confirm.

Then select "Navigate HOME" and confirm to start guidance.

# 04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

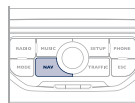
## ROUTE OPTIONS

The route selected by the Peugeot Connect Navigation system depends directly on the route options.  
Changing these options may change the route completely.

1



Press the NAV button.

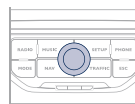


2



Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

**Navigation Menu**

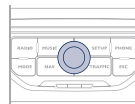


3



Select the "Route options" function and press the dial to confirm.

**Route options**

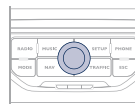


4



Select the "Route type" function and press the dial to confirm. This function allows you to change the route type.

**Route type**

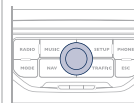


5



Select the "Route dynamics" function.  
This function gives access to the "Traffic independent" or "Semi-dynamic" options.

**Route dynamics**

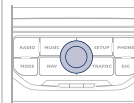


6



Select the "Avoidance criteria" function. This function provides access to the AVOID options (motorways, toll roads, ferries).

**Avoidance criteria**

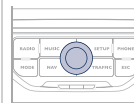


7



Turn the dial and select the "Recalculate" function to take into account the route options selected. Press the dial to confirm.

**Recalculate**



# 04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

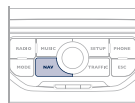
## ADDING A STOPOVER

Stopovers can be added to the route once the destination has been selected.

1



Press the NAV button.

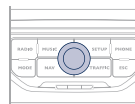


2



Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

Navigation Menu

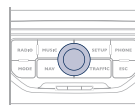


3



Select the "Stopovers" function and press the dial to confirm.

Stopovers

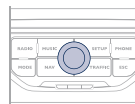


4



Select the "Add stopover" function (5 stopovers maximum) and press the dial to confirm.

Add stopover

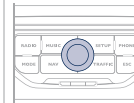


5



Enter a new address, for example.

Address input



6



Once the new address has been entered, select OK and press the dial to confirm.

OK

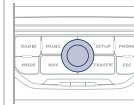


7



Select "Recalculate" and press the dial to confirm.

Recalculate

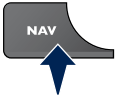
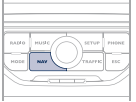
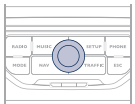
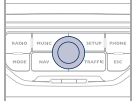
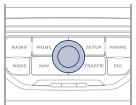
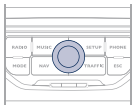
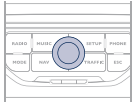
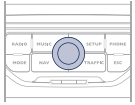
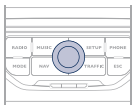


The stopover must be completed or deleted in order for the guidance to continue to the next destination. Otherwise, the Peugeot Connect Navigation will always return you to the previous stopover.

# 04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

## SEARCHING FOR POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

The points of interest (POI) indicate all of the service locations in the vicinity (hotels, various businesses, airports...).

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1</p>  <p>Press the NAV button.</p>                                                                                                                     |  | <p>6</p>  <p>Select the "POI in city" function to search for POIs in the city required. Select the country then enter the name of the city using the virtual keypad.</p> <p><b>POI in city</b></p> |  |
| <p>2</p>  <p>Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press the dial to confirm.</p> <p><b>Navigation Menu</b></p>            |  | <p> A list of cities present in the country selected can be accessed via the LIST button on the virtual keypad.</p>                                                                                |                                                                                     |
| <p>3</p>  <p>Select the "POI search" function and press the dial to confirm.</p> <p><b>POI search</b></p>                                                  |  | <p>7</p>  <p>Select the "POI in country" function to search for POIs in the country required.</p> <p><b>POI in country</b></p>                                                                     |  |
| <p>4</p>  <p>Select the "POI nearby" function to search for POIs around the vehicle.</p> <p><b>POI nearby</b></p>                                          |  | <p>8</p>  <p>Select the "POI near route" function to search for POIs near the route.</p> <p><b>POI near route</b></p>                                                                              |  |
| <p>5</p>  <p>Select the "POI near destination" function to search for POIs near the point of arrival of the route.</p> <p><b>POI near destination</b></p> |  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                     |

# 04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE



This icon appears when several POIs are grouped together in the same area. Zooming in on this icon shows details of the POIs.

## LIST OF PRINCIPAL POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

|  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
|  | Service station      |
|  | LPG station          |
|  | Garage               |
|  | PEUGEOT              |
|  | Motor racing circuit |
|  | Covered car park     |
|  | Car park             |
|  | Rest area            |
|  | Hotel                |
|  | Restaurant           |
|  | Refreshment area     |
|  | Picnic area          |
|  | Cafeteria            |

|  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
|  | Airport              |
|  | Railway station      |
|  | Bus station          |
|  | Port                 |
|  | Industrial estate    |
|  | Supermarket          |
|  | Bank                 |
|  | Vending machine      |
|  | Tennis court         |
|  | Swimming pool        |
|  | Golf course          |
|  | Winter sports resort |
|  | Theatre              |

|  |                         |
|--|-------------------------|
|  | Cinema                  |
|  | Camp site               |
|  | Theme parks             |
|  | Hospital                |
|  | Pharmacy                |
|  | Police station          |
|  | School                  |
|  | Post office             |
|  | Museum                  |
|  | Tourist information     |
|  | Automatic speed camera* |
|  | Red light camera*       |
|  | Risk area*              |

\* According to availability in the country.

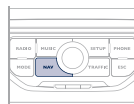
# 04 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

## NAVIGATION SETTINGS

1



Press the NAV button.

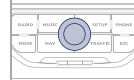


2



Press the NAV button again or select the Navigation Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

**Navigation Menu**

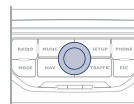


3



Select the "Settings" function and press the dial to confirm.

**Settings**

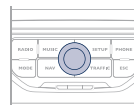


4



Select the "Navi volume" function and turn the dial to set the volume of each voice synthesiser (traffic information, alert messages...).

**Navi volume**



To activate or deactivate vocal guidance, with guidance active and the map displayed on the screen, press the dial and then select or deselect "Voice advice".

**Voice advice**



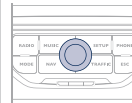
The adjustment of the volume for the Risk Areas POIs is used only during the transmission of an alert.

5



Select the "POI categories on Map" function to select the POIs to be displayed on the map by default.

**POI categories on Map**

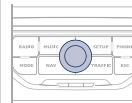


6



Select "Set parameters for risk areas" for access to the "Display on map", "Visual alert" and "Sound alert" functions.

**Set parameters for risk areas**



## UPDATING THE RISK AREAS POIs

This requires an SDHC (High Capacity) compatible reader.

Download the update file from the Internet ([www.peugeot.fr](http://www.peugeot.fr) or [www.peugeot.co.uk](http://www.peugeot.co.uk)).

Open this file and copy the extracted documents to the DATABASE folder on the SD card, replacing the existing files.

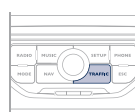
# 05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

## CONFIGURE THE FILTERING AND DISPLAY OF TMC MESSAGES

1



Press the TRAFFIC button.



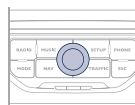
The list of TMC messages appears under the Traffic Menu sorted in order of proximity.

2



Press the TRAFFIC button again or select the Traffic Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

**Traffic Menu**



3

Select the filter of your choice:

**Messages on route**

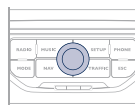
**All warning messages**

**Only warnings on route**

**All messages**

The messages appear on the map and on the list.

To exit, press ESC.

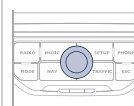


4



Select the "Geo. Filter" function and press the dial to confirm.

**Geo. Filter**



5



Then select the radius of the filter in miles (km) required in accordance with the route, press the dial to confirm.

When all of the messages on the route are selected, the addition of a geographical filter is recommended (within a radius of 3 miles (5 km) for example) to reduce the number of messages displayed on the map. The geographical filter follows the movement of the vehicle.



The filters are independent and their results are cumulative. We recommend a filter on the route and a filter around the vehicle of:

- 2 miles (3 km) or 3 miles (5 km) for a region with heavy traffic,
- 6 miles (10 km) for a region with normal traffic,
- 30 miles (50 km) for long journeys (motorway).

# 05 TRAFFIC INFORMATION

## PRINCIPAL TMC SYMBOLS

1 Black and blue triangle: general information, for example:



Weather reports



Traffic reports



Wind



Fog



Parking



Snow/ice

2 Red and yellow triangle: traffic information, par example:



Modified signage



Narrow carriageway



Slippery surface



Accident



Delay



Roadworks



Risk of explosion



Road closed



Demonstration



Danger

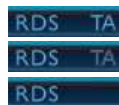


No entry



Traffic jam

## RECEIVING TA MESSAGES



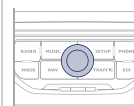
- the station transmits TA messages.
- the station does not transmit TA messages.
- TA messages are not activated.

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

1



With the current audio source displayed on the screen, press the dial.



2

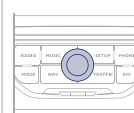
The shortcut menu for the source appears and gives access to:

TA

3



Select Traffic Announcements (TA) and press the dial to confirm and go to the associated settings.



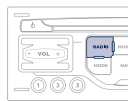
# 06 RADIO

## SELECTING A STATION

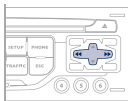
1



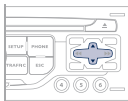
Press the RADIO button to display the list of stations received locally sorted in alphabetical order. Select the station required by turning the dial and press to confirm.



While listening to the radio, press one of the buttons to select the previous or next station on the list.



A long press of one of the buttons starts the automatic search for a station with a lower or higher frequency.



Press one of the buttons on the numeric keypad for more than 2 seconds to store the current station. Press the button on the numeric keypad to recall the stored radio station.

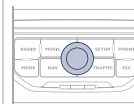
The external environment (hill, building, tunnel, underground car park...) may interfere with the reception, including in RDS following mode. This phenomenon is a normal result of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not in any way indicate a failure of the audio equipment.

## RDS - REGIONAL MODE

1

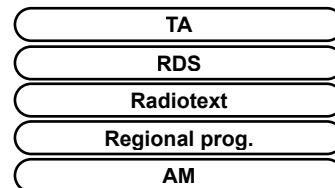


When the current radio station is displayed on the screen, press the dial.



2

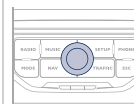
The radio source short-cuts menu appears and provides access to the following short-cuts:



3



Select the function required and press the dial to confirm to gain access to the corresponding settings.



RDS, if displayed, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

## 07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

### CD, MP3/WMA CD INFORMATION AND ADVICE



The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1, 2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3 and the WMA format, an abbreviation of Windows Media Audio and the property of Microsoft, are audio compression standards which permit the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.



In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.

If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.



The Peugeot Connect Navigation will only play audio files with the extension ".mp3" with a speed of between 8 Kbps and 320 Kbps and the extension ".wma" with a speed of between 5 Kbps and 384 Kbps.

It also supports the VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.

No other type of file (.mp4, .m3u...) can be played.



It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any play or display problems.

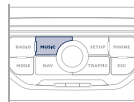
# 07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

## SELECTING/PLAYING MUSIC CD, MP3/WMA CD

1



Press the MUSIC button.



!

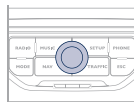
The list of tracks or MP3/WMA files appears under Music Menu.

2



Press the MUSIC button again or select the Music Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

**Music Menu**

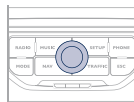


3



Select the "Select music" function and press the dial to confirm.

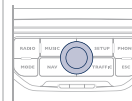
**Select music**



4



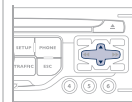
Select the music source required: CD, MP3/WMA CD. Press the dial to confirm. Play begins.



5



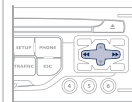
Press the up or down button to select the next/previous folder.



6



Press one of the buttons to select a music track.  
Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or rewind play.



The playing and displaying of an MP3/WMA compilation may depend on the recording programme and/or the settings used. We recommend the ISO 9660 file standard.

## 07 MUSIC MEDIA PLAYERS

### USING THE EXTERNAL INPUT (AUX) AUDIO JACK-RCA CABLE NOT SUPPLIED

1

Connect the portable device (MP3/WMA player...) to the audio sockets (white and red, RCA type) in the glove box using a JACK/RCA audio cable.

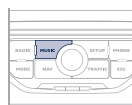


2



Press the MUSIC button then press it again or select the Music Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

**Music Menu**

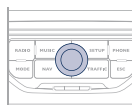


3



Select the "External device" function and press the dial to activate it.

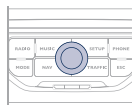
**External device**



4



Select the AUX music source and press the dial to confirm. Play begins automatically.



!

The display and management of the controls is on the portable device.

# 08 BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE



## CONNECTING A TELEPHONE



For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the Peugeot Connect Navigation must be carried out with the vehicle stationary. The ignition must be on.

1

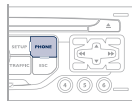
Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function. The last telephone connected is reconnected automatically.



2



Press the PHONE button.



The list of telephones connected previously (4 maximum) appears on the multifunction screen. Select the telephone required for a new connection.

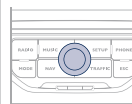
\* The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you. A list of mobile telephones with the best level of compatibility is available from the dealer network.

3



For a first connection, select "Search phone" and press the dial to confirm. Then select the name of the telephone.

Search phone



4

Enter the authentication code on the telephone. The code to be entered is displayed on the screen.

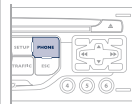


Once the telephone has been connected, Peugeot Connect Navigation can synchronise the address book and the call list. This synchronisation may take a few minutes\*.

5



To change the telephone connected, press the PHONE button, then select Phone Menu and press the dial to confirm.

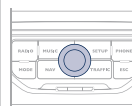


6



Select "Connect phone". Select the telephone and press to confirm.

Connect phone



# 08 BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

## RECEIVING A CALL

1

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display on the multifunction screen.

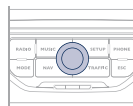
2



Select the "Yes" tab to accept or "No" to refuse and confirm by pressing the dial.

Yes

No

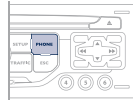


3

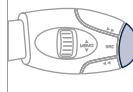


To hang up, press the PHONE button or press the dial and select "End call" then confirm by pressing the dial.

End call



Press the end of the steering mounted control to accept the call or end the call in progress.

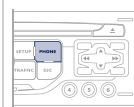


## MAKING A CALL

1



Press the PHONE button.



The list of the last 20 calls made and received in the vehicle appears under Phone Menu. You can select a number and press the dial to make the call.

2



Select the Phone Menu function and press the dial to confirm.

Phone Menu

Select "Dial number", then dial the telephone number using the virtual keypad.

Dial number



It is also possible to select a number from the address book. You can select "Dial from address book". The Peugeot Connect Navigation can record up to 4 000 entries.

Press the end of the steering mounted control for more than two seconds to gain access to the address book.



To delete a number, press the PHONE button then press and hold on a call number to display a list of actions including:

Delete entry  
Delete list

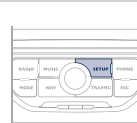
# 09 CONFIGURATION

## SETTING THE DATE AND TIME

The SETUP function gives access to the following options: System language, Date & Time, Display (Brightness, Colour, Map colour), Vehicle, Units, System.

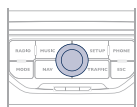
**!** These settings must be entered again if the battery has been disconnected.

**1**  Press the SETUP button.



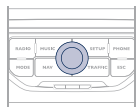
**2**  Select the "Date & Time" function and press the dial to confirm.

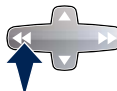
**Date & Time**

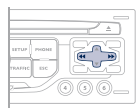


**3**  Select the "Set date & time" function and press the dial to confirm.

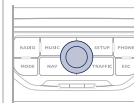
**Set date & time**



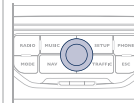
**4**  Adjust the settings one by one using the direction arrows and confirm by means of the dial.



**5**  Select the "Date format" function and press the dial to confirm.



**6**  Confirm the format required using the dial. Select the "Time format" function and press the dial to confirm.



 Confirm the format required using the dial. Pressing the SETUP button for more than 2 seconds gives access to:

**Description of the unit**

**GPS coverage**

**Demo mode**

# 10 SCREEN MENU MAP



## MAIN FUNCTION

- 1
  - 2
  - 3
  - 3
  - 2
- OPTION A
- option A1
- option A2
- OPTION B...



## "Traffic" Menu

- 1
  - 2
  - 2
  - 2
  - 2
  - 2
  - 3
  - 3
- Messages on route
- Only warnings on route
- All warning messages
- All messages
- Geo. Filter
- Within 2 miles (3 km)
- Within 3 miles (5 km)

- 3
  - 3
  - 3
- Within 6 miles (10 km)
- Within 30 miles (50 km)
- Within 60 miles (100 km)



## "Music" Menu

- 1
  - 2
  - 2
  - 3
  - 3
  - 3
  - 3
  - 4
  - 4
  - 4
  - 4
  - 4
- Select music
- Sound settings
- Balance/Fader
- Bass/Treble
- Equalizer
- Linear
- Classic
- Jazz
- Rock/Pop
- Techno

- 4
  - 3
  - 3
  - 3
- Vocal
- Loudness
- Speed dependent volume
- Reset sound settings



## "Radio" Menu

- 1
  - 2
  - 3
  - 3
  - 2
  - 2
  - 3
  - 3
  - 3
  - 4
- Waveband
- FM
- AM
- Manual tune
- Sound settings
- Balance/Fader
- Bass/Treble
- Equalizer
- Linear

- 4 Classic
- 4 Jazz
- 4 Rock/Pop
- 4 Techno
- 4 Vocal
- 3 **Loudness**
- 3 **Speed dependent volume**
- 3 **Reset sound settings**



## 1 "Navigation" Menu

- 2 **Abort guidance/Resume guidance**
- 2 **Destination input**
- 3 **Enter new address**
- 4 Country
- 4 City
- 4 Street
- 4 House number

- 4 Start route guidance
- 4 Postal code
- 4 Save to address book
- 4 Intersection
- 4 City district
- 4 Geo position
- 4 Map
- 3 **Navigate HOME**
- 3 **Choose from address book**
- 3 **Choose from last destinations**
- 3 **TMC station information**
- 2 **Stopovers**
- 3 **Add stopover**
- 4 Address input
- 4 Navigate HOME
- 4 Choose from address book
- 4 Choose from last destinations

- 3 **Rearrange route**
- 3 **Replace stopover**
- 3 **Delete stopover**
- 3 **Recalculate**
- 4 Fast route
- 4 Short route
- 4 Optimized route
- 2 **POI search**
- 3 **POI nearby**
- 3 **POI near destination**
- 3 **POI in city**
- 3 **POI in country**
- 3 **POI near route**
- 2 **Route options**
- 3 **Route type**
- 4 Fast route
- 4 Short route

- 4 Optimized route
- 3 **Route dynamics**
- 4 Traffic independent
- 4 Semi-dynamic
- 3 **Avoidance criteria**
- 4 Avoid motorways
- 4 Avoid toll roads
- 4 Avoid ferries
- 3 **Recalculate**
- 2 **Settings**
- 3 **Navi volume**
- 3 **POI categories on Map**
- 3 **Set parameters for risk areas**
- 4 Display on map
- 4 Visual alert
- 4 Sound alert



## "Phone" Menu

- 1
- 2 **Dial number**
- 2 **Dial from address book**
- 2 **Call lists**
- 2 **Connect phone**
- 3 **Search phone**
- 3 **Phones connected**
- 4 Disconnect phone
- 4 Rename phone
- 4 Delete pairing
- 4 Delete all pairings
- 4 Show details
- 2 **Settings**
- 3 **Select ring tone**
- 3 **Phone/Ring tone volume**
- 3 **Enter mailbox number**



## "SETUP" menu

- 1
- 2 **System language\***
- 3 **Deutsch**
- 3 **English**
- 3 **Español**
- 3 **Français**
- 3 **Italiano**
- 3 **Nederlands**
- 3 **Polski**
- 3 **Portuguese**
- 2 **Date & Time\***
- 3 **Set date & time**
- 3 **Date format**
- 3 **Time format**

\* Available according to model.

## **2 Display**

### **3 Brightness**

### **3 Colour**

4 Pop titanium

4 Toffee

4 Blue steel

4 Technogrey

4 Dark blue

### **3 Map colour**

4 Day mode for map

4 Night mode for map

4 Auto. Day/Night for map

## **2 Vehicle\***

### **3 Vehicle information**

4 Alert log

4 Status of functions

## **2 Units**

### **3 Temperature**

4 Celsius

4 Fahrenheit

### **3 Metric/Imperial**

4 Kilometres (Consumption: l/100)

4 Kilometres (Consumption: km/l)

4 Miles (Consumption: MPG)

## **2 System**

### **3 Factory reset**

### **3 Software version**

### **3 Automatic scrolling**

\* Available according to model.

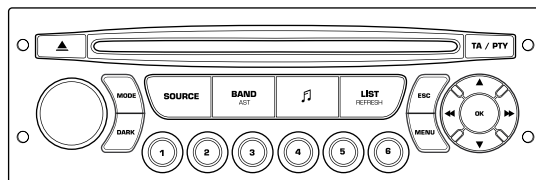
# FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

| QUESTION                                                                                   | ANSWER                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | SOLUTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...). | For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).                                  | Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the Linear musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.                                                                                        |
| The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.                            | The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play.<br>The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up.</li> <li>- Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged.</li> <li>- Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the Audio section.</li> <li>- The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs.</li> <li>- Because of their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.</li> </ul> |
| The CD player sound is poor.                                                               | The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                                                                                            | The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.                                                                                                                                                                                | Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

| QUESTION                                                                                                                                                      | ANSWER                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | SOLUTION                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...)                                                                                      | An incorrect waveband is selected.                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Press the BAND AST button to return to the waveband (AM, FM1, FM2, FMAST) on which the stations are stored.                    |
| The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...). | The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.                                                                       | Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area. |
|                                                                                                                                                               | The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.                                                                                                                                     | This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.                                              |
|                                                                                                                                                               | The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).                                                                                                                          | Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.                                                                                   |
| Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.                                                                                                               | During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.                                                                                                                                | Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.                                    |
| With the engine off, the audio equipment switches off after a few minutes of use.                                                                             | When the engine is switched off, the audio equipment operating time depends on the battery charge.<br>The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery. | Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.                                                                     |

| QUESTION                                                                                      | ANSWER                                                                                                                                            | SOLUTION                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| TA is selected. However, certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time. | On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.                                                   | Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (displaying of the traffic information symbols on the map).                                               |
|                                                                                               | In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.                                                    | This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.                                                                                 |
| I receive a speed camera alert for a camera which is not on my route.                         | The system announces all speed cameras located in a conical zone forward of the vehicle. It may detect speed cameras on nearby or parallel roads. | Zoom the map to view the exact position of the speed camera.                                                                                                             |
| The audible speed camera alert is not working.                                                | Audible alerts are not active.                                                                                                                    | Activate audible alerts in Navigation Menu, Settings, Set parameters for risk areas.                                                                                     |
|                                                                                               | The alert volume level is set to minimum.                                                                                                         | Increase the speed camera alert volume.                                                                                                                                  |
| The altitude is not displayed.                                                                | On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 3 satellites correctly.                                  | Wait until the system has started up completely. Check that there is a GPS coverage of at least 3 satellites (long press on the SETUP button, then select GPS coverage). |
|                                                                                               | Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.                     | This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the conditions of reception of the GPS signal.                                                                     |
| The route is not calculated successfully.                                                     | The exclusion criteria may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a motorway with tolls).                                 | Check the exclusion criteria.                                                                                                                                            |

| QUESTION                                           | ANSWER                                                                                                                                  | SOLUTION                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| There is a long waiting time after inserting a CD. | When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take a few seconds. | This phenomenon is normal.                                                                                                                                        |
| I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.           | The telephone's Bluetooth function may be deactivated or the equipment may not be visible.                                              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is activated.</li> <li>- Check that your telephone is visible.</li> </ul> |
| A telephone connected by Bluetooth is inaudible.   | The volume level depends on both the system and the telephone.                                                                          | Increase the Peugeot Connect Navigation volume setting, possibly to maximum, and increase the telephone volume level if necessary.                                |



# PEUGEOT CONNECT SOUND

## RADIO/BLEETOOTH



Your Peugeot Connect Sound is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. If it is to be installed in another vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer for configuration of the system.



For safety reasons, the driver should only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is off, and in order to prevent discharging of the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes.

## CONTENTS

|                                     |    |            |
|-------------------------------------|----|------------|
| <b>01 First steps</b>               | p. | <b>250</b> |
| <b>02 Steering mounted controls</b> | p. | <b>251</b> |
| <b>03 Main menu</b>                 | p. | <b>252</b> |
| <b>04 Audio</b>                     | p. | <b>253</b> |
| <b>05 Peugeot Connect USB</b>       | p. | <b>256</b> |
| <b>06 Bluetooth</b>                 | p. | <b>259</b> |
| <b>07 Configuration</b>             | p. | <b>261</b> |
| <b>08 Screen menu map</b>           | p. | <b>262</b> |
| <b>Frequently asked questions</b>   | p. | <b>265</b> |

# 01 FIRST STEPS



1. On/Off and volume adjustment.
2. CD eject.
3. Selection of the display on the screen from the following modes:  
Audio (AUDIO), Vehicle Diagnostics and Telephone (TEL) functions.
4. Selection of source:  
radio, audio CD/MP3 CD, USB, Jack connection, Streaming.
5. Selection of FM1, FM2, FMast and AM wavebands.
6. Setting audio options: front/rear balance, left/right balance, loudness, sound ambience.
7. Display the list of local stations, of the tracks on the CD or of the MP3 folders.
8. Abandon current operation.
9. TA (Traffic Announcement) function on/off.  
Long press: access to the PTY (Types of radio programme) mode.
10. Confirmation.
11. Automatic search for a lower/higher frequency.  
Selection of previous/next CD, MP3 or USB track.
12. Selection of a lower/higher radio frequency.  
Selection of the previous/next MP3 folder.  
Selection of the previous/next USB equipment folder/genre/artist/playlist.
13. Display the main menu.
14. Buttons 1 to 6:  
Selection of a stored radio station.  
Long press: store a station.
15. The DARK button changes the display on the screen to improve driving comfort at night.  
1st press: lighting the upper band only.  
2nd press: display of a black screen.  
3rd press: return to the standard display.

## 02 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

RADIO: selection of the previous stored station.  
USB: selection of the previous genre/artist/folder from the classification list.  
Selection of the previous item on a menu.

RADIO: automatic search for a higher frequency.  
CD/MP3/USB: selection of the next track.  
CD/USB: continuous press: fast forwards play.  
Selection of the previous item.

Volume increase.

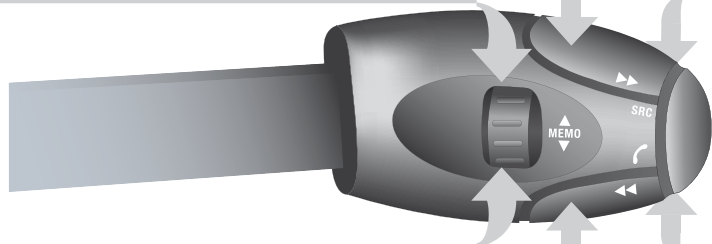
- Change of sound source.
- Confirmation of a selection.
- Pick up/Hang up the telephone.
- Press for more than 2 seconds: access to the telephone menu.

Mute: press the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.  
The sound is restored by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Volume decrease.

RADIO: selection of the next stored station.  
USB: selection of the next genre/artist/folder from the classification list.  
Selection of the next item on a menu.

RADIO: automatic search for a lower frequency.  
CD/MP3/USB: selection of the previous track.  
CD/USB: continuous press: fast reverse.  
Selection of the next item.



## 03 MAIN MENU

**AUDIO FUNCTIONS:** radio, CD, USB, options.

**TELEPHONE:** hands-free kit, pairing, management of a call.

> MONOCHROME SCREEN C



**VEHICLE DIAGNOSTICS:** alerts log.

**PERSONALISATION-CONFIGURATION:** vehicle parameters, display, languages.



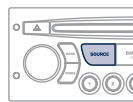
For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to the "Screen menu map" section of this chapter.

# 04 AUDIO

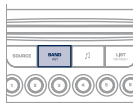


## RADIO SELECTING A STATION

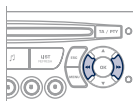
- 1**  Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select the radio.



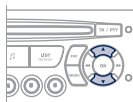
- 2**  Press the BAND button to select a waveband: FM1, FM2, FMast, AM.



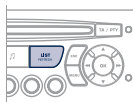
- 3**  Briefly press one of the buttons to carry out an automatic search of the radio stations.



- 4**  Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search of the radio stations.



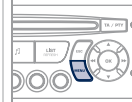
-   Press the LIST button to display the list of stations received locally (30 stations maximum). To update this list, press for more than two seconds.



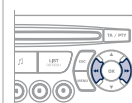
The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, ...) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio system.

## RDS

- 1**  Press the MENU button.



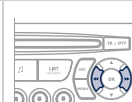
- 2**  Select AUDIO FUNCTIONS then press OK.



- 3**  Select the FM WAVEBAND PREFERENCES function then press OK.



- 4**  Select ACTIVATE RDS then press OK. RDS appears on the screen.



**!** The RDS, if displayed, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

## 04 AUDIO

### RECEIVING TA MESSAGES



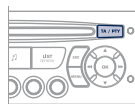
The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

1

TA / PTY



Press the TA button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.



### CD PLAYING A CD



Insert circular compact discs only.

Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player.

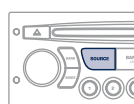
Without pressing the EJECT button, insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

1

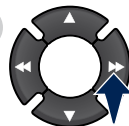
SOURCE



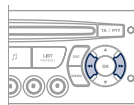
To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD.



2

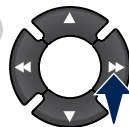


Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

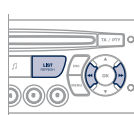


Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

3



Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward.



## 04 AUDIO

### MP3 CD PLAYING AN MP3 COMPILATION



Insert an MP3 compilation in the player.

The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.



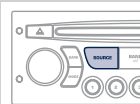
On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 folder levels. However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.

While the CD is being played, the folder structure is not followed. All of the files are displayed on a single level.

1



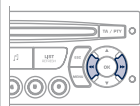
To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select CD.



2



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

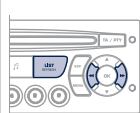


Press the LIST REFRESH button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.

3



Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.



### MP3 CD INFORMATION AND ADVICE



The MP3 format, an abbreviation of MPEG 1.2 & 2.5 Audio Layer 3, is an audio compression standard which permits the recording of several tens of music files on a single disc.



In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording, the ISO 9660 level 1.2 or Joliet file format is recommended.

If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording format is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet format is recommended.



The audio system will only play files with the extension ".mp3" with a sampling rate of 22.05 KHz or 44.1 KHz. No other type of file (.wma, .mp4, .m3u...) can be played.



It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters without using special characters (e.g. " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing or displaying problems.



Empty CDs are not recognised and may damage the system.

# 05 PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

## USING THE PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

The list of compatible equipment and the compression rates supported are available from PEUGEOT dealers.

1

This unit consists of a USB port and an auxiliary Jack socket\*. The audio files are transmitted from portable equipment such as a digital player or a USB memory stick to your Peugeot Connect Sound to be listened to via the vehicle's speakers.



2

USB memory stick (1.1, 1.2 and 2.0) or iPod® of generation 5 or later:

- USB memory sticks should be formatted FAT or FAT 32 (NTFS not supported),
- the iPod® lead is essential,
- navigation through the file database is by means of the steering mounted controls,
- the iPod® software should be regularly updated for the best connection.



3

Other iPod® players of earlier generations and players using the MTP protocol\*:

- play via Jack-Jack lead only (not supplied),
- navigation through the file database is from the portable device.



## CONNECTING A USB MEMORY STICK

1



Connect the memory stick to the port, directly or using a lead. If the audio equipment is switched on, the USB source is detected as soon as it is connected. Play begins automatically after a delay which depends on the capacity of the USB memory stick.

The file formats recognised are .mp3 (mpeg1 layer 3 only), .wma (standard 9 only, 128 kbits/sec compression), .wav and .ogg.

The playlists types accepted are m3u, .pls, .wpl.

!

The system puts together playlists (temporary memory) created over a period which depends on the capacity of the USB device. The other sources are available during this time.

The playlists are updated each time the ignition is switched off or each time a USB memory stick is connected.

When connecting for the first time, the classification suggested is by folder. When you reconnect, the classification selected previously is retained.

\* According to vehicle.

# 05 PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

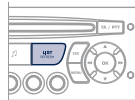
## USING THE PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

2

Press and hold LIST to display the different classifications.  
Select by Folder/Artist/Genre/Playlist, press OK to select the classification required, then press OK again to confirm.

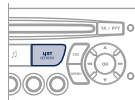


- by Folder: all folders containing audio files recognised on the peripheral device, classified in alphabetical order without following the flow chart.
- by Artist: all of the artist names defined in the ID3 Tags, classified in alphabetical order.
- by Genre: all of the genres defined in the ID3 Tags.
- by Playlist: in accordance with the playlists recorded on the USB device.



3

Press LIST briefly to display the previously selected classification.  
Navigate through the list using the left/right and up/down buttons.  
Confirm the selection by pressing OK.

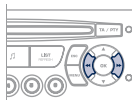


4



Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous/next track on the classification list currently being played.

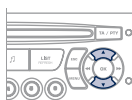
Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward play.



5



Press one of these buttons to gain access to the previous/next Genre, Folder, Artist or Playlist on the classification list currently being played.



## CONNECTING AN IPOD® VIA THE USB PORT

1

The lists available are Artist, Genre and Playlist (as defined on the iPod®).

Selection and Navigation are described in steps 1 to 5 above.

!

Do not connect a hard disk or USB devices other than audio equipment to the USB port. This could damage your installation.

## 05 PEUGEOT CONNECT USB

### USING THE AUXILIARY SOCKET (AUX) JACK SOCKET OR RCA SOCKET (according to vehicle)



The auxiliary socket, JACK or RCA, permits the connection of a portable device (MP3 player...).



Do not connect a device to both the USB port and the auxiliary JACK socket simultaneously.

1

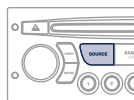
Connect the portable device (MP3 player...) to the auxiliary JACK socket or to the audio sockets (white and red, RCA type) using a suitable cable (not supplied).



2



Press the SOURCE button several times in succession and select AUX.



### ADJUSTING THE VOLUME OF THE AUXILIARY SOURCE

1

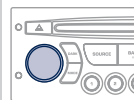
First adjust the volume of your portable device.



2



Then adjust the volume of your audio system.



The display and control is via the portable device.



# 06 BLUETOOTH



## BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE

### SCREEN C

(AVAILABILITY DEPENDS ON MODEL AND VERSION)

### PAIRING A TELEPHONE



!

For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio equipment must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on.

1

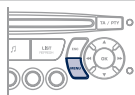
Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function.



2



Press the MENU button.

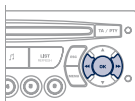


3



In the menu, select:

- Bluetooth telephone function - Audio
- Bluetooth configuration
- Perform a Bluetooth search



4

A window is displayed with "Searching..."

5

The first 4 telephones recognised are displayed in this window.

The services offered depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth equipment used. Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you. A list of mobile telephones which offer the best range of services is available from the network. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer.

!

The TELEPHONE menu permits access to the following functions in particular: Directory\*, Call list, Pairing management.

\* If your telephone is fully compatible.

6

Select the telephone to be connected from the list. Only one telephone can be connected at a time.

7

A virtual keypad is displayed on the screen: enter a code with at least 4 digits. Confirm by pressing OK.



8

A message is displayed on the screen of the telephone chosen: to accept the pairing, enter the same code on the telephone, then confirm by pressing OK. If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not limited.



9

"Pairing of Name\_telephone successful" appears on the screen.

10

The automatic connection authorised is only active after the telephone has been configured. The directory and the call list can be accessed after the synchronisation period.

!

The pairing can also be initiated from the telephone.

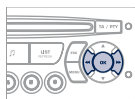
## 06 BLUETOOTH



### RECEIVING A CALL

- 1 An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display on the multifunction screen.

- 2  Select the YES tab on the display using the buttons and confirm by pressing OK.



- 2  Press the steering mounted control OK to accept the call.

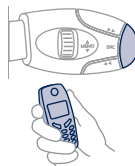


### MAKING A CALL

- 1 From the Bluetooth telephone function Audio menu, select Manage the telephone call then Call, Call list or Directory.

- 2 Press the end of the steering mounted control for more than two seconds to gain access to your directory.

Or  
To dial a number, use your telephone's keypad, with the vehicle stationary.



### BLUETOOTH AUDIO STREAMING

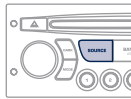
- ! Wireless transmission of the telephone's music files via the audio equipment. The telephone must be able to manage the appropriate bluetooth profiles (Profiles A2DP/AVRCP).

- 1 Initiate the pairing between the telephone and the vehicle. This pairing can be initiated from the vehicle's telephone function menu or via the telephone's keypad. See steps 1 to 10 on the previous pages. During the pairing phase, the vehicle must be stationary with the key in the ignition.



- 2 Select the telephone to be connected from the telephone function menu.  
The audio system connects to a newly paired telephone automatically.

- 3  Activate the streaming source by pressing the SOURCE button\*. The tracks to be played can be controlled as usual via the buttons on the Radio control panel and the steering mounted controls\*\*. The contextual information can be displayed on the screen.



\* In certain cases, playing of the Audio files must be initiated from the keypad.

\*\* If the telephone supports the function.

# 07 CONFIGURATION

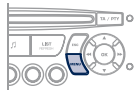


## SETTING THE DATE AND TIME SCREEN C

1



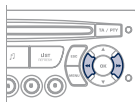
Press the MENU button.



2



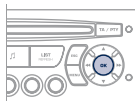
Using the arrows, select  
PERSONALISATION  
CONFIGURATION.



3



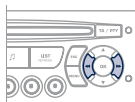
Press to confirm the selection.



4



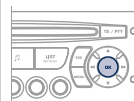
Using the arrows, select DISPLAY  
CONFIGURATION.



5



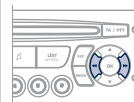
Press to confirm the selection.



6



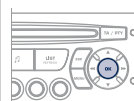
Using the arrows, select ADJUST  
DATE AND TIME.



7



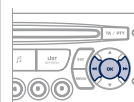
Press to confirm the selection.



8



Adjust the settings one by one  
confirming by pressing the OK  
button. Next select the OK tab on the  
screen then confirm.



## 08 SCREEN MENU MAP

### MONOCHROME C



Press the OK dial for access to short-cut menus according to the display on the screen:



#### 1 MAIN FUNCTION

##### 2 OPTION A

##### 3 Option A1

##### 3 Option A2

##### 2 OPTION B

#### RADIO

##### 1 activate/deactivate RDS

##### 1 activate/deactivate REG mode

##### 1 activate/deactivate radiotext

#### CD/MP3 CD

##### 1 activate/deactivate Intro

##### 1 activate/deactivate track repeat (the entire current CD for CD, the entire current folder for MP3 CD)

##### 1 activate/deactivate random play (the entire current CD for CD, the entire current folder for MP3 CD)

#### USB

##### 1 activate/deactivate track repeat (of the current folder/artist/genre/playlist)

##### 1 activate/deactivate random play (of the current folder/artist/genre/playlist)

# 08 SCREEN MENU MAP



Pressing the MENU button displays:



## AUDIO FUNCTIONS

### FM BAND PREFERENCES

#### alternative frequencies (RDS)

activate/deactivate

#### regional mode (REG)

activate/deactivate

#### radio-text information (RDTXT)

activate/deactivate

### PLAY MODES

#### album repeat (RPT)

activate/deactivate

#### track random play (RDM)

activate/deactivate



## VEHICLE DIAGNOSTICS

### ALERT LOG



## PERSONALISATION-CONFIGURATION

### DEFINE THE VEHICLE PARAMETERS\*

### DISPLAY CONFIGURATION

#### video brightness adjustment

normal video

inverse video

brightness (- +) adjustment

\* The parameters vary according to vehicle.

### date and time adjustment

day/month/year adjustment

hour/minute adjustment

choice of 12 h/24 h mode

### choice of units

l/100 km - mpg - km/l

°Celsius/°Fahrenheit

### CHOICE OF LANGUAGE

# 08 SCREEN MENU MAP

## MONOCHROME C



### 1 **BLUETOOTH TELEPHONE**

2 **Bluetooth configuration**

3 **Connect/Disconnect a device**

3 **Telephone function**

3 **Audio Streaming function**

4 Consult the paired device

4 Delete a paired device

4 Perform a Bluetooth search

2 **Call**

3 **Calls list**

4 **Directory**

2 **Manage the telephone call**

3 **Terminate the current call**

3 **Activate private mode**

# FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

| QUESTION                                                                                           | ANSWER                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | SOLUTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).         | For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).                                  | Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.                                                                                      |
| The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.                                    | The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play.<br>The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up.</li> <li>- Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged.</li> <li>- Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section.</li> <li>- The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs.</li> <li>- Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.</li> </ul> |
| The message "USB peripheral error" is displayed on the screen.<br>The Bluetooth connection is cut. | The battery of the peripheral may not be sufficiently charged.                                                                                                                                                                                        | Recharge the battery of the peripheral device.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                                                                                                    | The USB memory stick is not recognised.<br>The memory stick may be corrupt.                                                                                                                                                                           | Reformat the memory stick.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| The CD player sound is poor.                                                                       | The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                                                                                                    | The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.                                                                                                                                                                                | Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

| QUESTION                                                                                                                                                      | ANSWER                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | SOLUTION                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).                                                                                     | An incorrect waveband is selected.                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Press the BAND AST button to return to the waveband (AM, FM1, FM2, FMAST) on which the stations are stored.                    |
| The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.                                                                         | The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.                                                                                                                                                                     | Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.                                                                  |
| The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...). | The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.                                                                       | Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area. |
|                                                                                                                                                               | The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.                                                                                                                                     | This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.                                              |
|                                                                                                                                                               | The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).                                                                                                                          | Have the aerial checked by a PEUGEOT dealer.                                                                                   |
| Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.                                                                                                               | During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for any frequency permitting better reception of the station.                                                                                                                                | Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.                                    |
| With the engine off, the audio equipment switches off after a few minutes of use.                                                                             | When the engine is switched off, the audio equipment operating time depends on the battery charge.<br>The switch-off is normal: the audio equipment switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery. | Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.                                                                     |
| The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.                                                                                          | In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio equipment switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume or stopping of the playing of the CD.               | Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.                                                     |